



Government of Karnataka

WORLD HISTORY

**I PUC
Text Book**

2014-2015

Department of Pre University Education

Malleshwaram, Bengaluru - 560 012

www.pue.kar.nic.in

First Edition

May - 2013

**© Directorate of Pre-University
Education 2014.**

Revised Edition - 2014

All Rights Are Reserved

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photo copying, recording or otherwise without the prior permission of the publisher.

This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade, be lent, resold, hired out or otherwise disposed of without the publisher's consent, in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published.

The correct price of this publication is the price printed on this page/cover page. Any revised price indicated by a rubber stamp or by a sticker or by any other means is incorrect and should be unacceptable.

Printed on 80 GSM Maplitho paper

The Karnataka Text Book Society ® 100 feet Ring Road, Banashankari III Stage, BANGALORE - 560 085.
--

Publisher :

Abhimaani Prakashana

2/4 Dr.Rajkumar Road, Rajajinagar,
Bengaluru - 560 010, Ph: 080 23123141
e-mail:abhimaanigroup@gmail.com
web:www.abhimaanigroup.com

FOREWORD

The Department of Pre-University Education, Government of Karnataka entrusted the task of framing the syllabus and writing the text for the PUC first year students to the History text book committee. The Department also issued various instructions and guidelines to the text book committee to be followed in the course of preparing the text. The review and scrutiny committees also have contributed by suggesting suitable inclusions, deletions and corrections. The committee has followed the directions of the Department and prescribed the syllabus taking into consideration the syllabi of NCERT and that of the neighbouring States. The previous knowledge of the student is also considered.

After due consultations and discussions, the committee decided to have the History of the World as the subject matter for the PUC first year students. It decided to drop the periodical approach of history and follow the continuous and holistic approach and also to explain the themes of history in a simple and unbiased narration. The student is expected to have glimpses or an overview of World History in the first year and to study the Indian and Karnataka histories in the backdrop of his understanding of the World History in the second year PUC. The above discussed facts prompted the committee not to include some of the topics of Indian History (though deserves to be included) in the World History. The World History has a very wide scope- from the evolution of man to some contemporary events like NAM, disintegration of USSR, etc.

This text contains maps, glossary, box items, activities and pictures for additional knowledge, for enhancing independent thoughts and developing creativity among the students. It is to be noted that the information in the glossary, box items, activities and pictures are not meant to be asked as questions in the tests or Examinations. Questions are asked at the end of each topic or a Chapter, which will help the student to prepare for the tests and examinations and also by answering them, the subject matter is more clearly understood. The text has also used terms such as- BCE (Before Common Era) and CE (Common Era) instead of BC and AD which were used earlier. The text has been prepared for 120 hours of teaching. The chapter wise allocation of hours is based on the difficulty level of teaching, understanding and learning and also on the length of the chapter. The Model Question Paper and the Blue Print of the Model Question Paper are also provided at the end. It may be noted that some minor changes are introduced compared to older versions.

The committee held several meetings and met many subject experts. It has put in a lot of efforts to prepare the text and I sincerely hope that the text will serve its purpose and be useful to all the readers.

Dr. Gayathri Devi A.H

Chairman

History Text Book
Committee

Acknowledgements

The History text book committee owes its gratitude to many people, who have helped directly or indirectly in compiling this text book. The members of the committee have utilized information collected from various libraries, books of various Indian and foreign authors, various pictures and information from different Internet sites in writing the Text book. Many experts were consulted and their services were used.

The CET Cell Bengaluru, Government PU College for Girls, Malleshwaram Bengaluru and Maharani Lakshmi Ammanni PU College Malleshwaram Bengaluru provided the premises for the committee meetings. Similarly, the Rambhapuri Math trust , Balehonnuru and Maha Ganapathi trust, Idugunji also provided venues to the Committee's sittings. The Principal of Government PU College, Malleshwaram, Bengaluru has been of great help. The Cover page of the text is designed by Mr. Veeresh. The Committee acknowledges their help and expresses its hearty thanks for all the help received.

The committee extends its gratitude to all the officials of the Department of Pre-University Education, who have been instrumental in bringing out this text book for PUC first year.

For History Text Book Committee

HISTORY TEXT BOOK COMMITTEE

SL NO	NAME AND ADDRESS	DESIGNATION
1	Dr. GAYATHRI DEVI. A. H. Govt. PU College for Girls, 13 th Cross, Malleshwaram, Bengaluru	Chairman
2	Sri. HALESHAPPA. K. G. Sri Murali PU College, NELAMANGALA, Bengaluru Rural	Coordinator
3	Sri. SHAM PRASAD. K. Islamiya Composite PU College, BELGAUM.	Member
4	Sri. SADASHIVA BHAT. M. Sri Ramakunjeshwara PU College, Ramakunja, Puttur Tq, D.K.	Member
5	Dr. DURUGAPPA MALI KANAKAPPANAVAR Govt. PU College Kanakagiri, GANGAVATHI Tq, KOPPALA-Dist	Member
6	Sri. SHUBHAKARA. H. V. National PU College Balraj Urs road, SHIMOGA	Member
7	Sri. DAYANANDA. J. S. Govt. PU College for Girls, Basavanahalli, CHIKKAMAGALUR.	Member
8	Sri. THAMME GOWDA.H.P Govt. PU College,V.C .Farm, MANDYA.	Member
9	Sri. OM PRAKASH.V.DADDE. Govt. PU College, Aurad, BIDAR- Dist.	Member
10	Sri SHIVAKUMARA.M. MATHADA Govt. PU College, Kamalapura, Hospet Tq, BELLARY. Dist.	Member
11	Sri SHIRAGAOANKAR. N. V. R D Composite PU College, Chikkodi, BELGAUM. Dist.	Member
12	Dr. RAMESH.C.S. Indira PU College, Upparahalli, TUMKUR	Member
13	Sri. SRIKANT .Y. SHANAWAD, Beynon- Smith PU College, BELGAUM.	Member
14	Dr. GOPAL. G. V. Govt. PU College For Girls, KUNIGAL, TUMKUR. Dist.	Member
15	Sri. GURURAJ. J. R. Govt. PU College, Srirampura, Bengaluru	Member
16	Sri. NINGARAJU. N. R. Govt. PU College, Yelahanka, Bengaluru	Member
17	Sri. RAJESH. H. G. Govt. PU College, Seegehalli, Turvekere, Tq, TUMKUR	Member

TEXT BOOK REVIEW COMMITTEE

SL NO	NAME and ADDRESS
1	Sri. S.M. KAMDAL, Principal, S.S.R. P.U.College, Mudalgi, Gokak TQ. Belgaum Dist.
2	Sri. S.G. BHAT, Principal, Sri Subramanya Comp. P.U.College, Kavalakki, Honnavara.
3	Sri. ALBEN FRANCIS PICARDO, S.M.S. P.U. COLLEGE, Brahmavara, Udupi Dist.

SYLLABUS-WORLD HISTORY

Teaching Hours: 120

CHAPTERS	CONTENTS	Hrs	Page Nos.
1	INTRODUCTION: 1.1 Meaning and definition of History– Herodotus, Augustine, Karl Marx, J. B. Bury, Nehru and Toynbee 1.2 Importance of the study of History.	5 2 3	1-10
2	THE STORY OF HUMAN EVOLUTION.	08	9-24
3	HISTORY OF ANCIENT CIVILIZATIONS: 3.1 Introduction 3.2 Egyptian Civilization 3.3 Mesopotamian Civilization. 3.4 Chinese Civilization.	12 3 3 3 3	30-68
4	ESTABLISHMENT OF GREEK AND ROMAN EMPIRES– CONTRIBUTIONS: 4.1 Greek City-States–Cultural Contributions. 4.2 Roman Republics – Legacy of Romans.	12 6 6	69-104
5	RISE AND SPREAD OF CHRISTIANITY AND ISLAM: 5.1 Life and Teachings of Jesus Christ– Spread of Christianity. 5.2 Life and Teachings of Prophet Mohammed.	06 3 3	105-124

6	MEDIEVAL PERIOD-TOWARDS CHANGE- Church, Society and State- Feudalism.	05	125-141
7	BEGINNING OF MODERN AGE: 7.1 Geographical Explorations 7.2 Renaissance. 7.3 Reformation- Martin Luther- Counter Reformation.	12 4 4 4	142-174
8	WORLD REVOLUTIONS: 8.1 Industrial Revolution. 8.2 American War of Independence. 8.3 The French Revolution of 1789 8.4 Russian Revolution.	14 4 3 4 3	175-219
9	NAPOLEON AND RISE OF NATIONALISM: 9.1 Napoleon Bonaparte 9.2 Unification of Italy. 9.3 Unification of Germany.	10 4 3 3	220-245
10	WORLD WARS AND INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS: 10.1 World War I -Treaty of Versailles. 10.2 Rise of dictatorships. 10.3 World War II. 10.4 UNO-Organs-Achievements.	14 4 2 3 5	246-284
11	CONTEMPORARY WORLD: 11.1 Cold War. 11.2 Disintegration of USSR. 11.3 Formation of CIS.	8 5 2 1	285-312
12	NON ALIGNED MOVEMENT - EMERGENCE OF THE THIRD WORLD.	08	313-331
13	MAP WORK: HISTORICAL PLACES OF WORLD IMPORTANCE.	06	332-349
	Blue print		340

Model Question Paper with Answers

341-353



Government of Karnataka

WORLD HISTORY

I PUC

Text Book

CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION

1.1 MEANING OF HISTORY

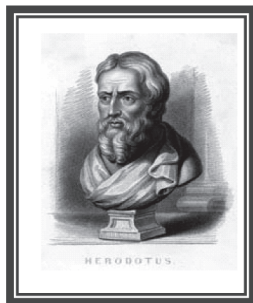
History is one of the greatest branches of human knowledge. The term 'history' has been derived from the Greek word 'Historia', which means 'Enquiry' or 'Investigation'. The word 'Itihasa' in Sanskrit means definite events that have occurred. The purpose of history is to seek truth. Broadly speaking history is the subject dealing with all aspects of human life.

The Greeks were the first to evolve the art of writing history as a scientific discipline. Herodotus, a Greek historian is believed to have initiated the writing of history and hence he has been regarded as '**The Father of History.**'

Definitions:

Generally, history is understood as a record of past events. There is no universally accepted definition of history. It has been defined differently by different scholars. From Herodotus to Will Durant, an American historian, various historians have defined history in different angles.

1. Herodotus (484-424BCE)



Herodotus was a Greek historian who lived in the 5th century BCE. He has contributed richly to history and Anthropology. He travelled in Greece and West Asia. He collected information of the Greek city-states and wrote nine volumes. Among them, '**The History of Persian Wars**' deals with the war between Persians and Greeks. His work was the earliest writing on history. He was the first to state the meaning and

scope of history. According to Herodotus- **“History is a record of great heroes and unique events to be remembered by the future generations”**.

In this definition, Herodotus has focused his thoughts on the achievements of great men and important events from which the succeeding generations can learn.

2. St. Augustine (354 to 430 CE):

St. Augustine was a Christian saint and a profound thinker.

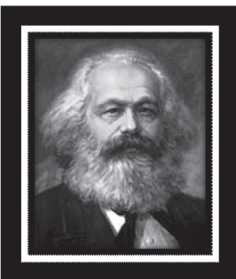


He was the greatest among the church historiographers of the medieval period. His work **‘The City of God’** is considered as one of the greatest works in the world. According to Augustine-**“History is the story of the struggle between God and Satan, which would ultimately end in the victory of God (good) over Satan (evil)”**.

St Augustine, being a church historiographer gave more importance to miracles and saints in his writings. He strongly believed that human history was guided by God. History in the medieval Europe was the monopoly of the church men for several centuries. They used both secular and religious histories as an instrument to popularize the church faith.

3. Karl Marx: (1818-1883 CE)

Karl Marx was a German Philosopher, Economist, Sociologist, Historian, Journalist, and Revolutionary socialist.

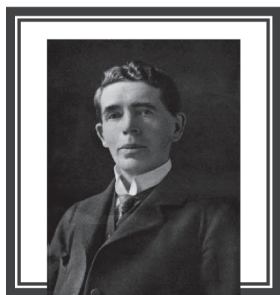


His ideas played a significant role in the establishment of the social sciences and the development of the socialist movement. He is also considered as one of the greatest economists in history. He enunciated a new economic interpretation of the definition of history.

According to Karl Marx- “**History is a story of the struggle between the haves and have nots**”. In this definition Marx emphasizes on the struggle between ‘the haves’ and the ‘have nots’ i.e. the rich and the poor. He argues that there is a constant conflict between the exploiters and exploited. He wrote two great works viz., ‘**Das Capital**’ and ‘**Communist Manifesto**’.

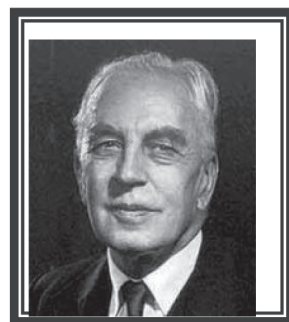
4. J.B. Bury (1861-1927 CE):

J.B Bury was an Irish historian and a scholar. He worked as a professor of modern history at Cambridge University.



According to him ‘**History is a science.; no less and no more**’ Bury says–Every historian must work like a scientist, collect the data and valid evidences. He should critically evaluate the subject and bring out the truth without bias. But, observation and experimentation are not possible in history. Similarly, events in history cannot be re-created. Hence, history is not a pure science. J.B Bury himself said ‘**History is the oldest art and the youngest aspirant to become a science**. Historian will have to make use of his talents to present his subject in a creative manner.

5. Arnold Toynbee (1889-1975 CE):

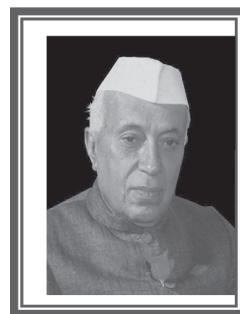


Arnold Toynbee was a British historian. He worked as a professor of history in London University. He wrote a number of works on religion and history. His great work ‘**A Study of History**’ is in 12 volumes. He studied 26 civilizations of the world. According to him ‘**History is the story of the rise and fall of civilizations**’. Toynbee explains that–

History is the story of 'Man' but not of Individuals, their power, glory and battles. It is the 'People' who should be given importance. For him history is the treasure of knowledge of man and his role in the development of culture and civilization.

6. Jawaharlal Nehru (1889-1964 CE):

Jawaharlal Nehru, the first Prime Minister of India was very much interested in the study of history. His well known works are- '**Discovery of India**' and '**The Glimpses of World History**'. Both were written when he was a political prisoner. 'The Glimpses of World History' is a collection of letters which he wrote to his daughter Indira Gandhi.



According to Nehru- “ **History is a story of man from Barbarism to civilization**”.

Nehru feels that man, through ages has struggled to improve at every stage. He says history involves both conflicts and harmonies, which have helped him to attain a high level of civilization. This fact can be ascertained in the background of more than 4000 years of human history.

From the above definitions it is very clear that history is mainly concerned with the activities of human beings. It is a narrative of past events and has led man towards the right path. It can be concluded that- “**History is the study of all significant human activities in various dimensions, which is restricted in 'time' and 'place'**”.

1.2 IMPORTANCE OF THE STUDY OF HISTORY

The study of history gives us an account of the evolution of the culture of mankind since ancient times. History presents

an ocean of experiences of different people. Hence, the study of history has been useful to man in many ways.

1. History is the memory of the past events :

The study of history gives us information about the biographies of great men and a record of major events of the world. It provides us an insight into the process of struggle of mankind, his interaction with environment, his rise and fall. According to Will Durant- **“A country’s past is like an individual’s memory, if memory goes sanity goes with it”**. Hence it is essential for man to understand his surroundings and the entire world which will add to his awareness and intellect. Hayes and moon write- **“As memory is to man, history is to mankind”**.

2. History teaches religious tolerance:

The religious tolerance between different sects is a must to have peace and understanding in the society. Peace leads to prosperity in the society. Historians have warned us that religious intolerance always hinders the development of any society. The religious stalwarts like- Jesus, Kabir, Guru Nanak, Sufi saints, Basaveshwara and Ramakrishna Paramahansa, have tried to sow the seeds of love and affection in humanity. In doing so, they propagated the concept of religious harmony in the society. So, the knowledge of history is very essential to develop religious tolerance. In the words of famous British historian Arnold Toynbee **“India’s religious tolerance is the only way for the survival of mankind”**.

3. History is the Source of Inspiration :

History is like an ocean of human experience. It records joys and sorrows, great deeds, achievements, contributions,

adventures, thoughts and sacrifices of extraordinary men, hence is a source of inspiration. For instance, - the tradition and culture, and the ideals of Mahaveera, Buddha, Acharyas- Shankara, Ramanuja and Madhwacharya, Vivekananda, Abraham Lincoln, and Nelson Mandela are the source of inspiration. Their teachings and preachings have played an important role in shaping the personality of the people. Thomas Carlyle says- **“Great personalities are no more, but, history and autobiography of such personalities are still there.”**

4. History promotes patriotism :

A Study of history is one of the important factors in promoting patriotism. A nation's heritage such as - art, music, literature, religion, philosophy, folklore and so on forms the basis of nationalism. The knowledge about heritage makes one feel proud. The researches done in the 19th century in respect of ancient Indian history and culture laid a strong foundation for Indian nationalism. The life and achievements of Shivaji, Kittur Channamma, Lakshmi Bai, Bala Gangadhara Tilak, Bhagath Singh, Chandrashekar Azad, Subashchandra Bose and Mahathma Gandhiji promote patriotism among us.

5. History is a laboratory of social sciences:

History has practical utility as it supplies historical data to social sciences like Economics, Sociology, Psychology, Theology, Philosophy, Logic, Geography etc. So it is the root of all social sciences. In the past, these social sciences were studied as branches of history. So, history has become a laboratory in furnishing knowledge for them. Most of the political resolutions of the UNO are largely based on the lessons of history. Thus every social scientist depends on

the sources of history in expressing his final opinion.

6. History infuses noble ideals:

Modern age has attained excellence in the physical world not in the metaphysical world. That means people are losing respect for values or ethics. In this critical juncture, the values propagated by great men of the past need to be adopted by the modern man. History gives the details about the noble ideals of Ashoka, Jesus Christ, Prophet Muhammad, Kanakadasa, Dr.B.R. Ambedkar, Mother Theresa etc. Studying history helps us to become good citizens by adopting noble ideals. History contributes the noble ideals like liberty, equality, fraternity, truthfulness, ethics, non-violence, service to others, love and affection, forgiveness, kindness, the best political policy, religious tolerance etc. to the modern generation. George Santayana puts History as-**"It is a treasure of noble ideals and is a light to show the right path"**.

7. History helps to broaden our outlook:

The study of history helps us to get knowledge about the people of different countries, traditions, customs, cultures and civilizations. Thus it broadens the outlook of mankind. The details recorded in History relating to Art, Architecture, Literature and Religion expands one's horizon of knowledge.

8. History promotes international peace:

The world has already witnessed the misgivings of the two World Wars. If another war takes place in the future, it would destroy the whole world. History has pointed out that unawareness of the culture and narrow nationalism of the other countries lead to such wars.

Today there is a great deal of competition among different

countries in possessing nuclear weapons and war equipments. For the development of cordial relations between nations the study of world history is the need of the hour.

The world has become a global village with the development of science and technology and improvements in transport system. Every country depends on the other for the fulfillment of their needs. So there should be an amicable understanding among nations. History has given details about the importance of the League of Nations and the UNO and their role in establishing peace all over the world. So, history states that all are equal. There should not be any discrimination based on caste, creed and religion in the society.

9. History has Professional uses:

It is a competitive world. History is the main core subject for the competitive examinations like IAS, IPS, IFS, KAS, etc. The historical knowledge is a matter of necessity for Students, Teachers, Lawyers, Journalists, Administrators and Statesmen. Politicians need historical knowledge in implementing administrative reforms. Thousands of historians are working in the department of Archeological Survey of India (ASI) under the Central and State Governments. Archeologists conduct excavations and throw new light on the past. They not only discover antiquities but also preserve them, for which, the government appoints professional historians. New opportunities have opened up for the students of history at museums, Archives, Tourism development and related fields. Thus, history has professional uses.

10. History removes prejudices:

History helps us to remove prejudices particularly relating to caste, creed, colour, class, language, etc. These prejudices did much harm among people and nations in the past. Extreme nationalism was one of the major causes for the two World Wars. These wars killed millions of people and brought untold misery to the people. That's why there should be peace, friendship and co-ordination between nations. This is possible only through the study of history.

To conclude, history is the source of inspiration to individuals, nations and the world as a whole. It also serves as a laboratory to all social sciences in particular and all branches of knowledge in general. It is the gist of all important human actions and it serves as a guide to mankind. As remarked by Dr. B.R. Ambedkar **“Those who forget history cannot create history”**.

Questions

I. Answer in one word or one sentence (Each carries 1 Mark)

1. What is the meaning of the word 'Historia' ?
2. From which language is the term 'Historia' derived ?
3. Who is called as 'the Father of History' ?
4. To which country did Herodotus belong ?
5. Mention the work of Herodotus.
6. Who wrote the book 'The city of god' ?
7. Who gave the economic interpretation of history ?
8. Write the definition of history by Karl Marx.
9. What is J.B. Burry's definition about history ?

10. Mention the book of Arnold Toynbee.
11. Who defined History as- 'The rise and fall of civilization'?
12. What is the definition of Jawaharlal Nehru about history?

II. Answer in 2 words or 2 sentences each: (Each carries 2 Marks)

1. Mention any two definitions of history.
2. Name the works of Karl Marx.
3. Which are the two important works of Jawaharlal Nehru?
4. Mention any two professional uses of history.

III. Answer in 15 to 20 sentences: (Each carries 5 Marks)

- 1) Write the definitions of history.
- 2) Explain the importance of study of history.

Chapter- 2

THE STORY OF THE EVOLUTION OF MAN

In this chapter, we will discuss the evolution of man. Here, the evolution of man means the evolution of the human being. The term 'human' is derived from the Latin word 'humanus'. It is the adjective form of 'homo' meaning 'man' (inclusive of woman). The evolution of man is a long, slow and a gradual process running over millions of years. But it is a small portion in the history of the evolution of the Earth and subsequently the evolution of various life forms that have appeared on earth till today. Evolution of the Earth and various life forms is an ongoing process. It has never stopped since its origin.

Origin and Evolution of Earth

There are many theories regarding the origin of earth. But the origin of the Earth has not been conclusively understood. The theories only try to unravel the mystery of the origin of the Earth. Some of them are religious or philosophical and the others are scientific. Among the scientific theories like the Steady State theory, the Pulsating theory, the Big Bang theory, etc. The Big Bang theory is popular and widely accepted.

- 1) The steady State theory states that the galaxies are continuously formed filling empty spaces.
- 2) The Pulsating Theory states that the Universe expands and then contracts continuously. The repeated expansion and contraction is like the 'Pulse'.
- 3) The Big Bang theory states that all the matter in the universe was present at a single place in the form of a hot and dense fire ball. A Big Bang scattered it in all directions creating galaxies. Earth is a small object in our galaxy the "Milky Way"

Earth is one of the planets in the solar system. But it is the only planet on which life has evolved. Earth is said to have been formed at least 4.5 billion years ago. The temperature was so high that the Earth was a white hot mass of melted rock. It witnessed frequent volcanic eruptions and large collisions. Many numbers of comets and meteors collided with the earth in its early years of evolution. One such large collision is believed to have caused the earth's tilt and the formation of the Moon. Those are a couple of important factors along with many other, which formulated the weather and climate of the earth.

The Earth remained in the molten state for many million years and then began to cool. The volcanic activity also reduced considerably. The gradual cooling of the Earth made the outer side to become solid rock, which is called Earth's crust. Further cooling made the Earth's crust

Activity 1: Find out some religious stories about the origin of the Earth and origin and evolution of life.

Activity 2: Find out some scientific theories about the origin of the Earth and origin and evolution of life.

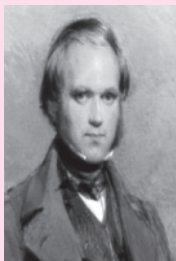
to contract resulting in the formation of mountains and valleys. They are like folds and wrinkles appearing on an apple which is left to dry for a few days. The gases released by Volcanoes created the primordial atmosphere. The crust was still hot and water was in the form of steam. Further cooling condensed the steam to form clouds and then rains began to pour in torrents. This continuous down pour formed lakes, rivers, oceans and seas. The rains and winds eroded the valleys and mountains. The erosion formed rocks to break and form tiny particles of sand and mud. The continuous erosion formed soil and the ocean floor.

Earth was still not compatible for life to originate because the atmosphere was toxic.

Origin and Evolution of Life

There are many theories regarding the origin of Life on Earth. According to the most popular theory, about 700 million years ago the basic chemicals in the earth's atmosphere-Hydrogen and Carbon somehow combined to form life in the water. This slowly evolved into primitive water plants. They began to grow and occupy the shallow and warm seas. The water plants gradually adapted themselves and began to encroach on to the land. About 500 million years ago Protozoa originated in the water. It is considered to be the first form of animal life. Then single cell beings became multi cellular. The primitive life forms like photosynthetic bacteria released oxygen into the atmosphere as they evolved. This made the earth more habitable for other higher life forms to originate and evolve.

Water creatures appeared. Insects and Amphibians came into existence. The Amphibians were capable of existing on land and water as well. Then the reptiles appeared and some of the species among them adapted to become birds. All this diversified life forms took about 400 million years to evolve. Mammals evolved about 200 million years ago. Horses, Camels, Dogs, etc.



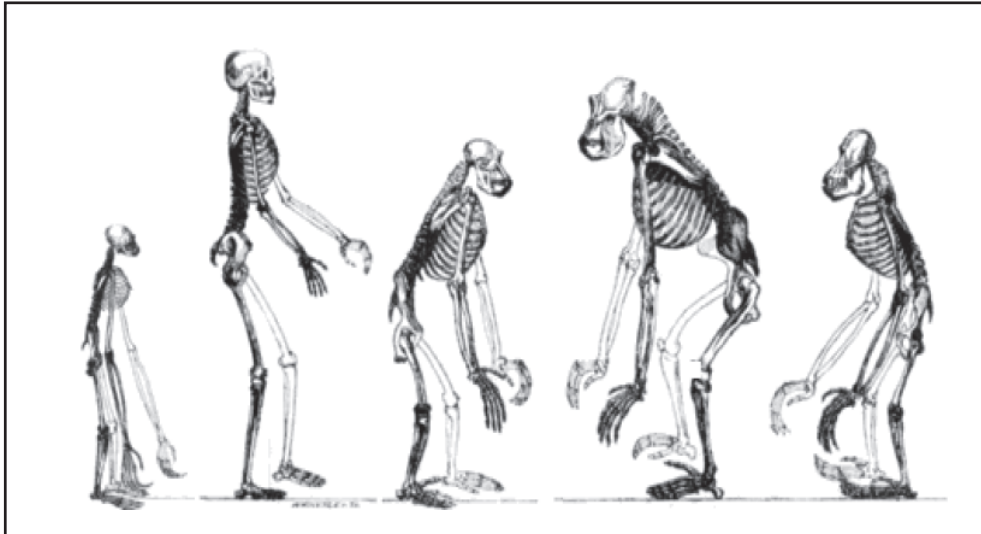
Charles Robert Darwin (12 February 1809 – 19 April 1882) was an English naturalist. He established that all species of life have descended over time from common ancestors, and proposed the scientific theory that this branching pattern of evolution resulted from a process that he called natural selection, in which the struggle for existence has a similar effect to the artificial selection involved in selective breeding. Darwin published his theory of evolution with compelling evidence in his 1859 book *On the Origin of Species*, resulting in the rejection of earlier concepts of transmutation of species.

evolved around 50 million years ago.

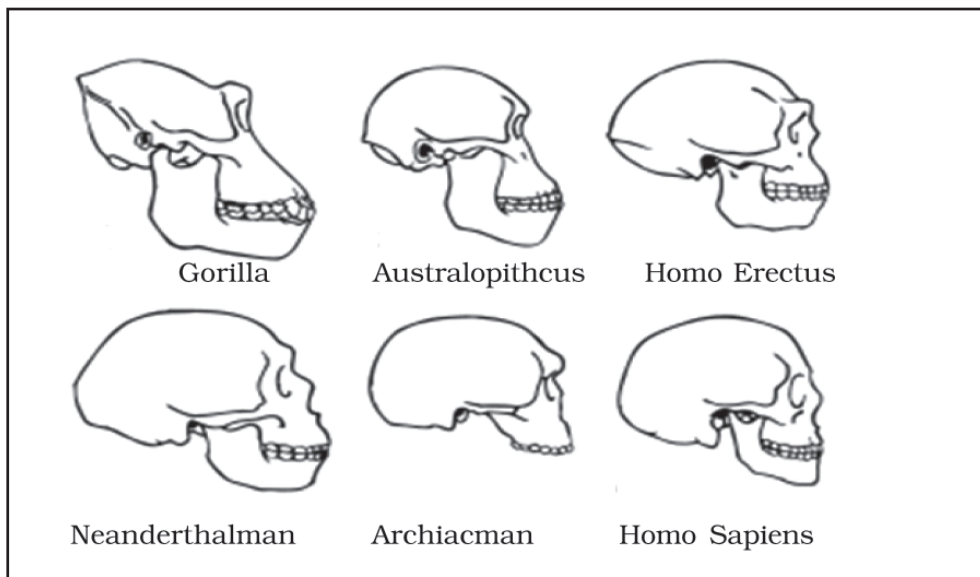
Many diverse species of life originated and thrived. Some among them became extinct, when they were unable to adapt to the climatic changes or dominance of other species. For example, Dinosaurs, which once were a dominant species on Earth became extinct about 65 million years ago.

The Evolution of Man

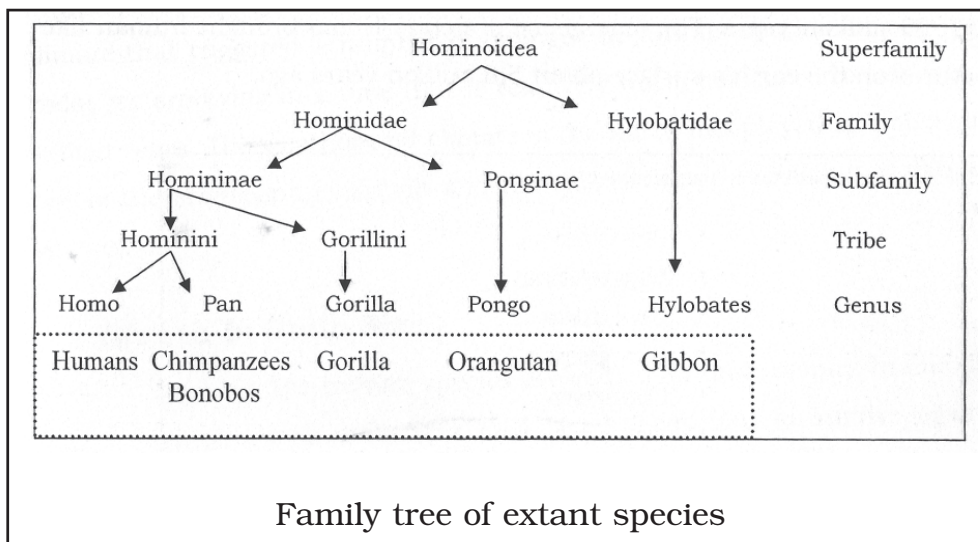
The study of human evolution is complicated. It involves many disciplines including Anthropology, Primatology, Archaeology, Linguistics, Embryology and Genetics. Discovery of human fossils, stone tools and cave paintings serve as evidences for the study of evolution. Most of such fossils discovered are of extinct species. They provide a link to the extant species. The fossils which provide evidence to the evolution of man are usually secured by chance. The process of recovery of the fossils is a very painstaking and laborious task. Fossils are dated directly through chemical analysis or the sediments in which the fossils were buried are chemically analyzed for dating. Many unanswered questions are being understood with the unearthing of new data and development of science. The theory of Natural Selection proposed by Darwin, in his famous book 'The Origin of Species' has greatly helped the construction of the story of evolution. His theory 'survival of the fittest' can be seen as evidences to the evolution and extinction of different species. The reconstruction of human history becomes very difficult as the sources or evidences are very ancient, most of the times running into thousands of years.



The above picture shows skeletons of various apes along with that of the human. We can observe that there are close similarities among the humans and other apes. The similarities are evidences to the fact that man and the apes had a common origin.



The above figure shows the skulls of Gorilla and various human species of different time periods. Notice the similarities and differences in the brain case, jaws and the teeth, skulls and skeletons. The similarities are evidences to the fact that different species including man and gorillas are from the same origin. The differences show the evolution of the skull in different human species at different periods of time.



The ancestral species of all the present humans, chimpanzees and bonobos, gorillas, orangutans and Gibbons belong to the super family, Hominoidea. They are classified as Primates. They branched out of the Mammals about 36 million years ago. All the species belonging to the Hominoidea super family are called **Hominoids**. They are shown in the above picture in the dotted box exactly below the respective genus in the picture showing the family tree of the extant species.

1. The superfamily Hominoidea branched into Hominidae and Hylobatidae families. The species of the respective families are called Hominids and Hylobatids. The

Hominids that is, humans, chimpanzees and bonobos, gorillas and orangutans diverged away from the Hylobatids, that is, Gibbons.

2. The Hominidae family branched into Homininae and Ponginae subfamilies. The species of the respective subfamilies were called Hominines and Pongines. The Hominines that is, humans, chimpanzees and bonobos and gorillas diverged away from the Pongines, that is the Orangutans.
3. The Homininae subfamily branched into Hominini and Gorillini tribes. The humans, and chimpanzees and bonobos branched away from the Gorillas
4. The Hominini tribe branched into Genus Homo and Genus Pan. That is, the ancestral human species branched away from the Chimpanzees and the Bonobos. Hence the Chimpanzees and Bonobos are the closest relatives of the humans.

The evolution of genus Homo from the super family Hominoidea took about 30 million years. The emergence of genus Homo brought human like creatures on the earth's surface about 5.6 million years ago.

The list of the immediate ancestors of modern humans

- Homo habilis
- Homo rudolfensis
- Homo ergaster
- Homo georgicus
- Homo erectus
- Homo cepranensis
- Homo antecessor
- Homo heidelbergensis
- Homo rhodesiensis
- Homo neanderthalensis
- Homo sapiens
- Homo sapiens idaltu
- Archaic Homo sapiens (Cro-Magnon)

Important Factors In Human Evolution

1. Climate Change

The changing cycles of climate and weather have greatly affected the human evolution to a very large extent. The last 6 to 8 million years has generally seen cooling trends marked by recurring ice ages. The onset of ice age around 2.5 million years ago covered most parts of earth with snow and there were major changes in climate and vegetation. The cooling and drying conditions led to the contraction of forests which expanded the plains or grasslands and deserts. This increased competition among plants and animals for food. The species which could better adapt to the climatic changes and procure food survived and the others became extinct. The ice age or glacial age induced

the early humans to wear animal skin to keep themselves warm. Many times new species originated from them which adapted better than the earlier species. The early forms of Australopithecus faced gradual extinction and genus Homo (early man) which was better adapted to drier conditions survived. The last Ice age witnessed by earth was about 20,000 years ago. Hence it was the earth's climate that triggered a number of changes in various species for survival. Today we are living in a time that is relatively warm compared to last 6 to 8 million years. The weather and climate of the Earth has played an important role in the origin and evolution and the existence and extinction of various species.

2. Growth in Brain Size

The human species evolved larger and complex brains due to the environmental challenges they faced. They had to survive against physically powerful animals. The size of the brain in the Homo habilis was 600 cubic centimeters. It was only slightly larger than that of chimpanzees. The Homo erectus species had the brain size of 800-1100cc, the Neanderthal Man 1200-1900 cc and the Homo sapiens (wise man) of today has the brain of

The size of the brain today's human that is the Homo sapien is about 1400 c.c. It is smaller than the brain size of the Neanderthal man. This was again the evolution of the human brain. The brain size of the Neanderthal man was 1200-1900 c.c. which was of not much use as the larger brain consumed more calories and amino acids during the periods of scarce food supply. Moreover the incremental brain growth proved unfavorable after a particular point as it began to consume more energy. This was optimized in the Homo sapiens species.

about 1400 c.c. It is more than twice the size of the brains of Chimpanzees or Gorillas. The growth in the brain size induced many activities like improved vision, upright posture, bipedalism,

tool making, use of fire, planned and skilled hunting, storing food, language, etc. These activities helped in the development of the brain.

3. Food And Shelter

A) Hominoids lived on **trees**. The trees provided them protection from the predators. The Hominoids were food gatherers. They procured food by gathering seeds, nuts, fruits, berries, tubers, etc. They were not meat eaters.

B) Hominids began to adapt to land. The change in climate or ice age reduced the forests and expanded the grasslands, plains and deserts. They were forced to come on to land to procure food. Initially they came on to land for brief periods of time which gradually began to grow into longer periods. Then they adapted to land dwelling. The Hominids began to use **caves** and extended stone boulders as shelter. These shelters on land provided them with considerable safety from the predators and from rain, wind and the sun. The Neanderthal man was the earliest cave dweller. The shortage of food made them to **scavenge** for food. They covered long distances to forage or scavenge for naturally dead animals or leftovers of animals killed by predators. The above activities made them gradually develop an upright posture and consequently the bipedal motion. This was required for survival.



Homo neanderthalensis is popularly known as the Neanderthal man. It was discovered in 1856 in the coal mines of Neander valley in Germany and brought to light by Johann Carl Fuhlrott. It was discovered along with sophisticated tools (in comparison with tools used by other human species). The species is the closest relative of modern humans. They lived in shelters and hence are popularly called 'cavemen'. They also controlled fire and used it to keep themselves warm and cook flesh. They buried the dead and many a times marked them. Hence the beginning of culture is assigned to this species

C) Hominines and the archaic human species began planned hunting and fishing to the already existing gathering, foraging and scavenging techniques. The earliest evidences of planned hunting and butchery of large animals is traced to two sites, 1) Boxgrove in England dated to about 500,000 years ago and 2) Schoningen in Germany dated to about 400,000 years ago. Planned hunting required developing tools and co-operation from fellow beings, as the animals they hunted were larger, stronger and faster. Planned hunting and making tools stimulated the growth in the brain size. The growth in brain size in turn helped him to plan and make better tools.



Structural shelter at
Poul nabrone dolmen, Ireland

The early humans also began to visit places of abundant food supply. The places like river beds and lake beds had abundant supply of food. These places necessarily did not have caves or extended stone boulders for shelters. They began to erect or build **structural shelters** by using stone, wood, skeleton of large animals or bones and thatch. The journey of human species commenced on trees, continued in cave dwelling and proceeded to structural shelters.

4. Bipedalism

The Hominoids were Quadrupeds. They walked on all four limbs, but, the forelimbs were flexible. The Hominids gradually

Activity 3: Make a list of activities which are done using power grip and another list done using precision grip. Also notice that many of our daily activities listed cannot be done by the Apes for they have not evolved hands with power and Precision grips.

adapted an upright posture. Bipedalism was a basic adaptation of the Hominines. Here bipedalism means walking or running on two feet.

The skeletal structure and the muscles also adjusted over a period of time to the upright posture and the bipedal motion. Bipedal motion freed the forelimbs. The forelimbs gradually developed precision grip and power grip. With this, the forelimbs evolved into hands. This greatly helped in hunting and defending from predators as hands could be used to make tools and also use them. Walking on two legs also provided a greater long distance vision and helped them to cover long distances, without spending much energy.

5. Tool Making

The use of tools is not confined to the humans. For example, some monkeys and apes use stones as tools to break nuts. But the use of tools by humans is far more advanced compared to the monkeys and apes. The process of making and using tools required greater intelligence. Wood, bones and stones were used to make tools. They were mainly used for hunting or defending from predators. The use of stone tools is studied as 'the Stone Age' in History. The making and use of stone tools were responsible to the evolution of forelimbs into hands and also the growth in brain size. The oldest known stone tools are the 'Oldowan stone tools' from Ethiopia, which are dated to 2.6 million years ago. The skill and advancement in making stone tools have made historians to classify the Stone Age as Paleolithic, Mesolithic and Neolithic stone ages. Further the humans also began to produce metals from ores and produce copper, bronze and iron tools which are studied in history as respective metal ages.

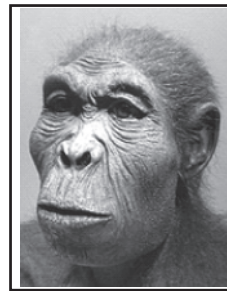
The Australopithecus species is said to have first used the naturally available stones as tools. But, the making of stone tools from naturally available stones and using them is positively identified to have started with Homo habilis.



The Australopithecus means the southern ape. This species is estimated to have lived on earth about 3.2 million years ago. It is an ape with very close resemblance to early humans. The fossils of Australopithecus have been discovered in Tanzania, Ethiopia and South Africa. They had a small brain of about 500 c.c. They had gained an erect posture and started to walk on two feet. They are the closest relatives of genus homo.



Homo habilis



A Reconstruction of Homo habilis

Homo habilis was the earliest among the genus homo. This species lived on earth about 2 million years ago. The fossils were discovered in Olduvai Gorge, Tanzania by Louis Leaky and his team. Homo habilis is also called the 'Handy man' because of well evolved hands and this species was responsible to make tools for hunting.



Homo erectus means the 'upright man'. This species is said to have lived on earth around 1.5 million years ago. The Australopithecus and Homo habilis species also were having erect postures, but complete erect posture is attributed to Homo erectus species. Some of the homo erectus species are believed to have migrated out of Africa into Europe and Asia. The species became extinct by 500,000 years ago.

6. Language

Planned hunting required co-operation. The early humans began to use signals and gradually two or three word utterances. This kind of crude communication began to improve to produce different kinds of sounds. With the passage of time these utterances and sounds formed language. The development of language was mainly because of the growth in the brain size. The growth of language for humans required short term memory. It requires brain to remember and use many steps and combination of logic, words, symbols and thoughts. The Chimpanzees, which are the closest cousins of man, cannot remember the past 2-3 steps of logic, words, symbols or thoughts. The use of language in turn stimulated the brain to grow.

7. Domestication Of Animals And Commencement Of Agriculture

Domestication of animals was followed by the commencement of agriculture. The humans who were food gatherers and hunters now became 'food growers' or 'food producers'. They were prepared to overcome the effects of the climate changes like the ice age by adapting to domestication of animals and agriculture. They had food in the form of domestic animals. The first animal to be domesticated is generally believed to be the dog. It continuously hanged around the hunter's camp to pick up bones and scrapes of meat. They developed a bond. Thus the dog was domesticated. This was followed by sheep, goat cow, cat, camel and horse. The dogs helped the humans in hunting and guarding his shelter. The rearing of animals made man a nomad. He travelled widely seeking food and water to his animals.

Commencement of agriculture is considered as a revolutionary change in the history of human evolution. This was an important aspect of the Neolithic age. Man began to grow various crops like wheat, rice, millets, etc. The practice of agriculture is not more than 13,000 years old. It made him lead a settled life. This cropped up villages. The villages and towns were foundations of civilization / civilizations.

8. Art



Horse (15,000-10,000 BCE),
Lascaux, France



A rock painting at Bhimbetka,
M.P., India

The skill or art of making figurines or painting developed at a late stage of human evolution. Many such artifacts are discovered at many places of Europe, Africa and Asia. But none can be dated earlier than 40,000 years ago. Small Figurines or decorated objects were carved out of stone, bone or antler. The paintings in caves are generally of hunting or of animals. The paintings were done by using paints of charcoal mixed with water, blood, animal fats, etc. The art is claimed to have served the aesthetic pleasure, or were rituals or served magical purposes.

Place of Origin of the Humans

The place of origin of the humans or modern man is a much debated issue. There are two divergent theories- 1) The Replacement or African origin theory 2) The Regional Continuity theory.

- 1) The Replacement or African origin theory – According to this theory the modern human species evolved from the archaic species in Africa. Africa with its nurturing tropical climate consisting of strong wet and dry seasons provided an optimum environment for the emergence of modern human species. Some of them migrated to different regions of the world at different points of time. They replaced the earlier human like species in those regions. The discovery of fossils of the early human species in Africa and the genetical and anatomical homogeneity among the modern humans in all parts of the world are evidences for this theory.
- 2) The Regional continuity theory – According to this theory the evolution of different human species from the earlier species occurred in all regions of the world. It occurred in Europe and Asia also as it occurred in Africa. The evolution proceeded at different rates at different regions. The dissimilarities among the human populations in different regions of the world serve as evidence to this theory.

Transition to Civilization

Until 13,000 years ago the humans lived as hunter-gatherers. They lived in small groups. The advent of agriculture prompted Neolithic Revolution. The surplus food led to the formation of permanent human settlements. The domestication

of animals and use of metal tools occurred. Agriculture also encouraged trade and co-operation leading to the formation of complex societies. The human settlements from rural primitive societies transformed into complex urban societies giving rise to civilizations like that of Egypt, Mesopotamia, China and Indus. These Civilizations developed distinguished cultures of their own.

Glossary

1. Adaptation–

Change in behaviour of a person or group in response to new or modified surroundings.

2. Archaic–

Forming the earliest; prior to full development:

3. Fossil–

Any remains, impression, or trace of a living thing of a former Geologic age, a skeleton, footprint, etc.

4. Power grip–

The strong grip (hold) on an object. For example, grip when holding the handle of an axe, grip on the knob while opening a door, etc.

5. Precision grip–

The grip of the fingers of the hand when picking up a needle and passing a thread through the eye of the needle, etc.

6. Species–

It is often defined as a group of organisms capable of interbreeding and producing fertile offspring.

Questions

Answer in a word or a sentence. [Each One Mark]

- 1) From which language is the term 'human' derived?
- 2) What is the meaning of the term 'homo'?
- 3) When did the Earth originate?
- 4) Which was the book written by Charles Darwin?
- 5) When did human like beings evolve on earth?
- 6) How many years were required to genus homo to evolve from the superfamily Hominoidea?
- 7) When did genus Homo come into existence?
- 8) Which human species was the first to manufacture stone tools?
- 9) What is bipedalism?

Answer in two words or two sentences. [Each Two Marks]

- 1) Mention any two theories of origin and evolution of Earth.
- 2) Which were the two important factors responsible for the formation of Earth's weather and climate?
- 3) Which were the two chemicals responsible for the origin of life?
- 4) Which were the two theories proposed by Charles Darwin?
- 5) Which two animals are considered as the nearest relatives of man?
- 6) Where do we find evidences for the earliest planned hunting and butchery of large animals?

Answer in 15-20 sentences. [Each 5 Marks]

- 1) How was the Earth's Crust formed?
- 2) How was food and shelter responsible for Human evolution?
- 3) What was the role of domestication of animals and agriculture in Human evolution?
- 4) What role did bipedalism and Stone tools play in the Human evolution?
- 5) Discuss the place of origin of the modern Man.

**Answer the following Question in 30-40 sentences.
[10 Marks]**

- 1) Discuss the important factors of Human evolution.



Chapter 3

HISTORY OF ANCIENT CIVILIZATIONS

3.1 Introduction

In the previous chapter we have studied Human Evolution. Around 10,000 B.C.E, in the new Stone Age, Man made many significant inventions. The hunter turned into the herdsman, the wanderer turned into the settler, the gatherer turned into the grower.

Inventions that helped the growth of civilizations

Many inventions such as, use of fire, rearing of animals for milk and meat, new weapons, tools, utensils, fishing nets, clay pots, discovery of weaving and building of huts and houses , new means and methods of transport, such as animals and carts, etc have brought revolutionary changes and given rise to new arts, crafts and occupations.

The quotation “moving wheels made the civilizations” is noteworthy. The invention of moving wheel by man brought major changes in the profession of potter, carpenter, blacksmith, rope maker and transport system. It also increased the pace of growth of civilizations.

Around 6000 B.C.E. men made the most important discovery i.e. the ‘Discovery of the cultivation of land –Agriculture’, which brought a great change in the way of their living. Agriculture bound the *man to the soil*, assured him food throughout the year and fodder for his animals.

The meaning of the term 'Civilization':

Generally, civilization and culture are used as one and the same. Civilisation, broadly refers to 'more clearly defined' human society. The word civilization is derived from Latin word '**civilis**' meaning city or city states. It stands for more matured and refined life. The words civilization and culture are not always considered interchangeable. We may judge a group of people as not civilized but have a culture of their own. One can say that civilization is what 'we have' and culture is what 'we *are*'.

'Civilization' refers to our material gains, whereas culture refers to our spiritual and philosophical gains or achievements. Civilizations are often referred to as, living in cities where as, culture refers to the way of life of the people.

Civilization is a broader term and culture is a part of it. Civilization is a huge group of geographically oriented people. Every civilization has a culture of its own. Sometimes there could be more than one culture in a civilization. Culture is transmitted and transferred, civilization is entirely passed on. Civilizations grow, degrade, disintegrate and end. The difference between the two can further be summarized as follows.

Culture	Civilization
1. Most of it internal.	1. It is external.
2. Includes art, literature, religion, philosophy, food and dress, thoughts and beliefs, customs and traditions.	2. Includes towns, cities, villages, buildings, bridges, transport, technology etc.
3. It has no standards of measurement.	3. Has standards of measurements.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4. It is the way we believe, behave, think and act. | 4. It is the material attainments, gains and facilities used to make the life more comfortable. |
| 5. It cannot be said to be always advancing | 5. It is always advancing. |
| 6. Culture comes earlier. | 6. Civilization grows later. |
| 7. There can be a culture without civilization. | 7. There cannot be a civilization without culture. |

River Valleys- 'The Cradles of Civilization'

Most of the civilizations in the world developed on the banks of the rivers. The places where man settled first were naturally those parts of the world where the soil was rich and water available for drinking and irrigation, wide and flat lands through which great rivers ran and had a warm climate. Man appeared about 5.6 million years ago but started civilized life 7000 years ago. Civilized man made the most remarkable progress in the shortest possible time.



Egypt, Mesopotamia, India, China, etc were the first sites of human settlements. In these regions men first formed groups

to live together. Valleys of the rivers like Nile , Euphrates and Tigris, Indus, Huwang-Ho and Yangtse-sikiyang, etc have helped the great civilizations to flourish. Hence the river valleys are called the cradles of civilizations. The historians are facing difficulties in fixing the definite age of civilizations. So we are unable to assert, which was the first cradle of civilizations.

The factors that helped the growth of civilization-

- * Deposition of fertile alluvial soil caused by the river floods.
- * Continuous and un-interrupted supply of water for irrigation and domestic purposes.
- * Favourable climate generally found on the River valleys.
- * Plenty of food, fruits and vegetables for men and fodder for their animals.
- * River valleys helped fishing.
- * They helped the growth of trade and communication by providing means of transport.

Above factors reduced the burden of man in wandering for food and risk of life. There is a strong argument that – ‘Men become more civilized if they have leisure to do creative work’. It is certain that river valleys provided them food in plenty and sufficient leisure to develop civilizations. Men invented metals, made tools, were able to cultivate the land, built buildings in wood and stone, prepared vessels, boats, weapons, furniture, clothing, jewellery and many other things.

Characteristics of a civilization-

- 1 Group of people having a specific livelihood and specific settlement patterns.

- 2 Group of people having a specific pattern of administration.
- 3 Group of people having a specific social pattern and unique cultural traits.
- 4 Man during ages invented various metals and learnt their uses.
- 5 It gave rise to complex administrative system with bureaucracy and accounting which necessitated writing.
- 6 Civilization also developed complex economic system – such as ownership of land, distribution of production, personal possession, taxation, barter system, monetary system, etc.
- 7 People of one civilization tried to influence the other people politically, culturally and economically, which led to imperialism.
- 8 Growth of civilization necessitated the need for internal and external security.
- 9 Natural happenings such as rain, thunder, lightning, winds, floods, famines, seasons, birth and deaths and climatic variations motivated the development of philosophy, religion and science. This in turn stimulated the development of civilization.
10. We notice the rise and fall of civilizations owing to the social religious, political, economic, Geo-physical and environmental conditions.

3.2 Egyptian Civilization

Introduction

Probably the first civilization that developed was in Egypt, on the banks of river Nile. Egypt is in the northern part of African continent. It has geographical accessibility to Europe and Asia. The impenetrable desert on the east, south and west,

the Mediterranean Sea to the north provided natural defense for Egypt. So it was isolated from the rest of the world. It had a great advantage of being unusually safe from the attack of enemies. So it developed a unique civilization. Egyptian civilization was one of the long lasting and rich civilizations known to the world

Egypt – the Gift of Nile.

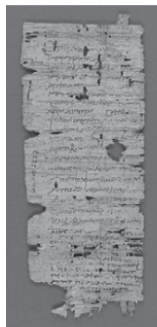
Nile River flowing northward has formed most fertile plains of 15-20kms on either side. Because of Nile, plenty of food, fodder and uninterrupted supply of water was possible. The food security provided sufficient leisure for the growth of civilization. Nile is born in thick equatorial forests of Africa. It flows full throughout the year. But for the Nile Egyptian civilization would not have developed. Therefore Egypt is called 'The Gift of Nile'.



Primitive men lived in Egypt for thousands of years. Basically they were hunters and food collectors. With a lot of observation of the Nature they must have got the idea of planting seeds in the wet mud. This was the beginning of agricultural occupation. It bound the man to the soil. There are different opinions among the historians about the origin of the people of Egypt. It is generally believed that they belonged to a group of the Caucasian or the white race people, who migrated from Northern Europe.

Sources of Egyptian Civilization-

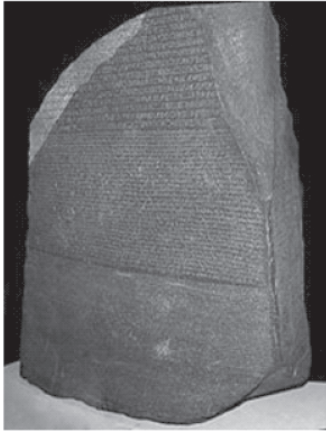
It was a great civilization which began 7000 years ago. It continued for more than 3000 years. We have a variety of archaeological and literary sources. They help us to reconstruct the history of those times. Important among them are the pyramids, the temples, the innumerable sculptural images like the sculpture of Sphinx, host of paintings, various implements, tools, jewellery etc kept in the pyramids. The Hieroglyphic writing on the papyrus, the Rosetta stone inscription, etc. are also sources of this civilization. Between 1798-1802 Napoleon invaded Egypt. After this the study of Egyptian Civilization got momentum.



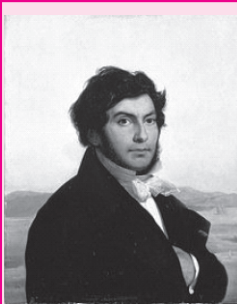
Bill of sale for a donkey on papyrus



Section of the Egyptian 'Book of the Dead' on papyrus



The Rosetta Stone presently in the British Museum



Francois Champollion

A French historian who has done a lot of work on Egyptian Civilization. As a child he showed an extraordinary linguistic talent. By the age of 16 he had mastered a dozen languages like Latin, Greek, Hebrew, Sanskrit, Avestan, Pahlavi, Syriac, Chaldean and Persian, in addition to his native French. In 1809, he became assistant-professor of History at Grenoble University. He was entrusted with the task of deciphering the writing on the then recently discovered Rosetta Stone. He completed the task between 1822–1824. His work-

'Précis du système hiéroglyphique' published in 1824 gave birth to modern Egyptology. Champollion was later made Professor of Egyptology at the College de France.

Political condition

The early people settled into villages, which developed into cities and later the city states were formed. They were ruled by kings. This is known as pre-dynastic period. These kings were engaged in inter City-state quarrels. This made way to the birth of kingdoms. Different dynasties ruled these kingdoms. About 30 dynasties have ruled Egypt for more than 3000 years. No dynasty survived for more than 6-7 generations.

The Pharoes

The Egyptian kings were called '**Pharoes**'. They were considered as representatives of god on earth, hence enjoyed unlimited power. The pharo 'Menes', united south and north Egypt in around 3000 B.C.E and made Memphis as his capital. The institution of Pharoes was so strong that Pharoes had legitimate control over the state and religion. The strong central government with absolute monarchy, a well controlled administration and strict implementation of laws were the basic features of Egyptian polity.

The rule of dynasties can be divided into 3 parts-

- 1] The period of old kingdom.
- 2] The period of middle kingdom.
- 3] The period of New kingdom.

The Period of Old Kingdom

It is also known as the period of pyramids. The pharoes of this period were very strong. There was a council of elders to advise the King, whose advice was not binding on the King. Pharo appointed Vizir the prime-minister. 'Vizir' or the Prime Minister headed the administration, justice and treasury. He was assisted by Central and Local officers in administration. The local officers collected taxes and looked after law and order where as the central officers maintained the records and the accounts.

The Period of Middle Kingdom

It is also known as the period of Feudal Lords. During this period Lords became more powerful than the Pharoes. It led to

many internal wars and anarchy. The authority of pharoes was restored by Amen Hotep I.

The Period of New Kingdom

During the new kingdom the kings raised a powerful army and built a very strong empire. Thutmose I conquered new territories and expanded the empire. His daughter, Hatshepsut succeeded him. She is known as the first empress in the history of the world. She ruled for twenty one years.

Social condition

Egypt had a well organized society. There were three classes viz, the upper class, the middle class and the slaves. The upper class included the royal family, the priests, the nobles and the military officers. The upper classes lived in adorned villas and led the life of comfort and luxury. The middle class included physicians, scribes, craftsmen, merchants and farmers. The lower class or the slaves formed the last strata of society. They lived a very hard and toiling life.

Status of women

Egyptian women enjoyed an exceptionally high status. Such a high status was not enjoyed by the women of any other civilization. That is why the Egyptian civilization has the credit of being ruled by Hatshepsut, the first empress in the world. Women had equal share in the ancestral property. Incestuous marriages were common among royal classes. The pharoes married their own daughters and sisters to prevent the property and power falling into the hands of outsiders. It was also aimed at maintaining the purity of blood.

Economic condition

It was an agrarian economy. Thanks to Nile-they had prosperous agriculture. The land, in the beginning was cultivated by hand. It was slow and tiresome. They grew crops like wheat, barley, cotton, peas, garlic and variety of fruits and vegetables. Canals and 'Shadoof' were used for irrigation. They enlarged the hoe and fixed it to the yoke of the oxen. It transformed 'The Hoe Culture into Plough Culture'.

Crafts and Manufacturers

Egyptians developed a variety of crafts and manufacturing. Stone cutters, masons, carpenters, jewellers, potters, etc added to the luxury, comforts and riches of life. The metals used were, copper in the beginning, followed by brass, bronze, gold and iron.

Trade and Commerce

Egyptians had developed both internal and external trade. They traded with the people of East Mediterranean and Red Sea areas, which included present Syria, Lebanon and Yemen. Barter system prevailed. They had trade relations with Mesopotamian and Asian countries. The boats in the river, big vessels on seas and cattle on the land were the means of transportation. A variety of taxes were levied on Agriculturists, Traders and Craftsmen which ranged between 10-20% of their income. The taxes were collected both in cash and kind.

Religion:

Religion played a significant role in the life of the people. Polytheism i.e. worship of many gods was in practice. They also practiced animism and totemism, which refers to the worship of trees and animals respectively. Amon Ra was the king of the

Gods, he was believed to be the creator of Egypt.

Ra was the Sun God. Osiris, the God of the dead or underworld. Isis was the Goddess of motherhood and the wife of Osiris. Horus, Hathor, etc were the minor Gods. Egyptians built many temples for the Gods. They believed in the transmigration of souls and preserved the dead bodies known as Mummies. They believed in life after death. Priests enjoyed high status. King was the head of the religion. King Amen Hotep IV made an effort to introduce monotheism i.e. worship of only one God that is Sun or Ra. It was discontinued by later kings.

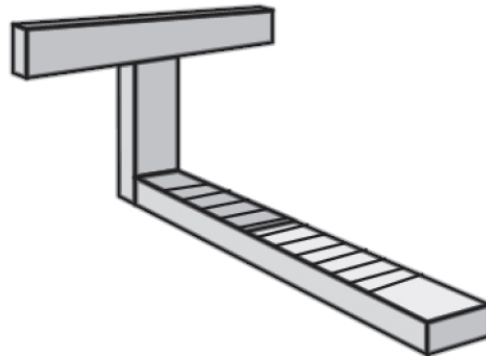
Mummification: The preservation of the dead bodies of the pharos is called mummification. Mummy was the home of a person's life after death. Egyptians prepared many years before for the life after death. They removed the internal organs, except the heart from the dead body and dried them in Norton salt for 40 days. Then they filled the body with dry leaves or sawdust and wrapped it in cloth. This mummy was kept in a coffin and covered with a cloth on which they kept the 'Book of the Dead'. They believed that the knowledge from this book would help the dead person to get knowledge to go to heaven happily.

Literature and Learning

Egyptians developed pictographic writing. It is one of the earliest forms of writing. Egyptian writing is called Hieroglyphics. Glyph means a sign. Hieroglyphics contains hundreds of signs. Some of them stand for complete words while others represent sounds. Papyrus was used for writing. **'The Book of Dead'**, **'Coffin Text'**, 'The Story of Ship-wrecked Sailor', 'The Tale to Anupu and Bitiu, etc are the important books discovered.

Egyptians had fair knowledge of Medicine, Geometry, Calendars, Astronomy and Mathematics. Most of the scholars of Ancient Egypt belonged to priestly class. The construction of

huge Pyramids proves beyond doubt that Egyptians had sound knowledge of Geometry and Arithmetic. They could measure the areas of triangles, rectangles, squares, circles and hexagons. They had clear idea about addition, subtraction and division. However they had no idea about multiplication. They were the first to develop the Fraction system.



The Shadow clock

They made a clear distinction between stars and planets. Their calendar was based on sun and known as Solar calendar. They developed the calendar of 365 days with 12 months in a year, of 30 days in each month. They divided the year into three seasons of four months each. Rising and receding of the Nile stood for the first season, cultivation and growing of the plants stood for the second and the third for the Harvest. About 1500 B.C.E. they invented shadow clock. Such an Egyptian shadow clock is preserved in Berlin Museum. Priests educated the people. At the age of 5 the child was sent to the teacher. It was given education for 12 years. The temples were the centers of education. Higher education was given by officials. In toto the education was controlled by the state.

Art and Architecture

Egyptians were great builders. They developed fine arts. Their art and architecture reflected their culture. They built temples for their Gods and Pyramids to bury their kings. The walls of temples and pyramids are carved with beautiful sculptures, and decorated with beautiful paintings. They used sandstone, limestone, granite and wood to carve the statues. Their art and architecture survived the blows of nature. They are the proofs of a well organized and highly skilled artists, craftsmen and labourers.



The Sphinx

The sphinx- it has the Head of a man and body of a lion. It is carved by the emperor Khaphre. It is 240 feet long and 66 feet high carved out in a single stone.



The Pyramid of Giza

The pyramid of Giza is the tomb of King Khufu. It is one of the wonders of ancient world. It is one of the heaviest structures ever built. It was built by his son and grandson. It is the biggest pyramid, 746 x 746, x 481 ft high 23,00,000 stone blocks of average 2.5 ton weight were used. It occupies 13 acres of area. A million slaves worked for 20 years to complete it. There are more than 90 Pyramids, still standing after 4000 years of their construction. The Pyramids are the fine examples of their outstanding technical knowledge and sound administrative ability.



The Luxor temple

It had a magnificent entrance. The road in front of it is lined with 365 statues of Sphinxes and two tall Obelisks stood on either side of the main road. During festive season the statues of Gods paraded through the doors into the temple.

Decline of Egyptian civilization:

Every human activity, with whatever high degree of perfection it might achieve, ends up in decay and disintegration. Same is true in case of Egyptian civilization.

Many reasons are attributed to it.

- 1) The rulers failed to bring a perfect and workable political system
- 2) The weak rulers were unable to maintain their authority. So the control fell into the hands of feudal lords resulting in decay and disorder.
- 3) Internal quarrels among the rulers led to disunity and disorder.
- 4) The ruthless exploitation of lower class and religious intolerance resulted in disharmony and disunity in the society.
- 5) Foreign invasions:-Many uncivilized invaders from Africa and Assyria attacked Egypt, during the rule of weak Pharoos. They destroyed their temples and advancement.
- 6) The invaders were more efficient in the art of warfare.
- 7) The material welfare and contented life discouraged independent thinking.

3.2 Mesopotamian Civilization

We have studied Egyptian civilization in detail. It is certain that the people of early civilizations learnt many things from Egyptians. At the same time they also made new discoveries to enrich their civilization. Now let us study the contribution of

Mesopotamians to the world.

Mesopotamia is a Greek word which means the 'land between two rivers'. The two rivers Euphrates and Tigris formed the fertile plains. Early tillers settled in villages. With the growth of population these villages developed into towns and later into cities. These plains were the cradles of many civilizations which, developed and vanished around 3500 to 500 B.C.E. Hence Mesopotamia is also called '**The Cradle and Graveyard of civilization**'.

Mesopotamia includes the area of present eastern Syria, Southern Turkey and most of Iraq. It is also known as land of Shinar. It was a centre of culture whose influence extended up to Egypt and India.



Map of Mesopotamia

It is very difficult to predict exactly the time of the beginning of this civilization. According to historians the transition must have taken place between fourth and third millennium B.C.E. Mesopotamia unlike Egypt was often subject to invasions by foreigners. It resulted in the rise and fall of many Empires. Five important races shaped the culture and civilization of Mesopotamia.

They are, 1] Sumerians, 2] Akkadians, 3] Amorites or the old Babylonians 4] Assyrians 5] Chaldeans or the new Babylonians.

- 1] Sumerians- Sumerians were the pioneers of Mesopotamian civilization. They had first settled in the area called Sumer. So they are called Sumerians.
- 2] Akkadians settled in northwest of Shinar also known as Akkad. So they were called Akkadians. They were nomadic tribes. They conquered Sumer and continued many aspects of Sumerian culture. King Sargon I was the most successful king. He strengthened the empire. Agade was the capital of Akkadians.
- 3] Amorites or the old Babylonians –They established their empire by destroying Akkadians. There was a period of chaos for 250 years. Babylon was their capital. Emperor Hammurabi was the greatest king and law maker of this race. After his death there was cultural stagnation.
- 4] Assyrians- Assyrians revived the glory of Mesopotamia during the days of emperor Tilgath-Pileser. They built a huge empire. Sargon II, Sennacherb and Assurbanipal were the great kings of the race. Their capital was Nineveh.

- 5] Chaldeans or New Babylonians – After the death of Assurbanipal Chaldeans came to power. They destroyed the city of Nineveh and rebuilt the city of Babylon as their capital. So they are called new Babylonians. Nebuchadnezzar was the greatest king who built huge brick fort around Babylon and a '**Hanging Garden**'. Persian emperor Cyrus conquered Babylonia in 538 B.C.E. Thus, the empire came to an end.

Salient features of Mesopotamian civilization

Political life:

Early Mesopotamians established the city states first, which developed into kingdoms and later into an empire. King was both the head of administration and religion. Kings were regarded as the representatives of God on earth. He was the head of the state and owner of the property of the state. He ruled the state in the name of God. Many a time the King's authority fell in the hands of military officers. Only the powerful kings exercised immense power. Priests had a greater voice in the administration. Governors were appointed to look after the provincial administration. They had horse borne postal system for communication.

Hammurabi

Hammurabi was a Babylonian king who conquered Sumer and ruled between 2123 to 2081 B.C.E. He was one of the greatest rulers of Mesopotamian civilization. He was a great conqueror and an able administrator. He conquered the whole of Mesopotamia. He was an enlightened despot. He united

Sumer and Akkad and divided the province into districts. He personally supervised the administration. He built palaces, temples and fortified Babylon. Central and provincial administration was carried out smoothly, according to the orders of the emperor.

Code of Hammurabi

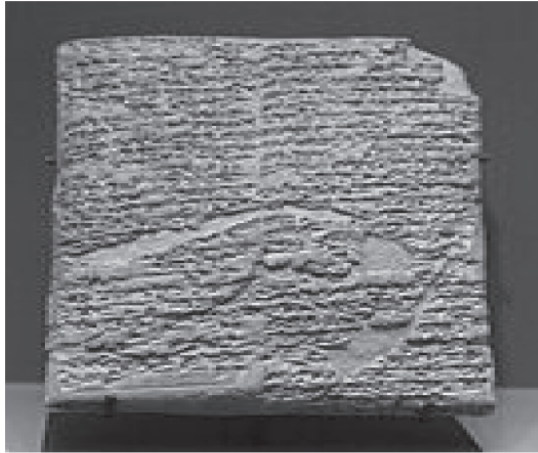


The Stone shaft containing
Hammurabi's Code



Close view of the Shaft

Hammurabi has become immortal in the history of mankind by his 'code of law'. He collected all existing laws, classified them, improved them, added new ones and codified them into one body of laws. The code included 282 laws. The laws were relating to all aspects of life such as- Personal property, Trade and business, accidents, labor, Marriage, Divorce, slaves, rights of men and women, etc.



A Tablet written in Akkadian language

The code is beautifully engraved on the black stone. It is the oldest written code of law known to history. On the top of it, the image of king Hammurabi is shown receiving the laws from God Shamash i.e. the Sun God. The code is a mixture of enlightened laws and barbarious punishments. Many of the laws are based on the principle of Tit for tat- 'An eye for an eye' or 'A tooth for a tooth'. It was universally applicable throughout his kingdom.

It was based on the principle of complete responsibility of the state to give justice. Individuals could not avenge but state could avenge the way it liked. The code aimed at deterring the people from committing crimes. There are provisions regarding almost all professions in the society. The code is aimed at providing equality. Women were given the right to own the property and inherit ancestral property.

fulfilled required conditions. Punishments were harsh for the people who were well placed and prosperous. Efforts were made to avoid discrimination between rich and poor. The business documents were to be witnessed by some body. If a doctor failed in his duty he had to pay compensation to the patient. Code of Hammurabi influenced other kings elsewhere in the world to pass similar laws. The significance of the code lies in the fact that it covered all aspects of human life. It was an everlasting and monumental legal achievement of Hammurabi, which has made him immortal.

Social condition:

The Mesopotamian society was divided into four groups. 1) The royals 2) The Priests 3) Rich Landlords and Merchants 4) Slaves.

Priests and scribes held high posts in the administration. They enjoyed high status in the society. Nobles enjoyed powers by heredity. They commanded great prestige and power in administration as well as army. The farmers, artists, craftsmen, shopkeepers, merchants formed the third strata followed by slaves at the lowest level. They could be bought and sold. Women enjoyed considerable freedom with right to property. They had social, religious and economic freedom.

Religious condition:

Mesopotamians worshipped Nature. They also worshipped innumerable Gods and Goddesses. They insisted every man to submit unconditionally to God and hoped that everything in the end would be good. Every village and city had a local deity.

They built Ziggurats i.e. temples with tall towers. Their temples were also centers of education. Gods and Goddesses like Marduk, Ishtar, Shamash, Uruk, Ur, and Nannar were worshiped. Marduk was supreme God, Ishtar mother of all Gods and Shamash the Sun God. Nannar the moon God, Bel – the earth Goddess and also the Goddess of death and Assur- the God of war. They practiced animal sacrifices and also believed in magic and demons.

Economic condition:

Agriculture was their main occupation followed by cattle rearing and dairy farming. They reared Buffaloes, Goats, Horses, Donkeys, Sheep, etc. They developed bunding to lands and artificial irrigation. They used the water wisely by digging canals from both the rivers. Mesopotamians also built dykes, embankments and storage basins to use the water throughout the year. It is believed that the Shadoof was developed by them, for artificial irrigation.



Shadoofs

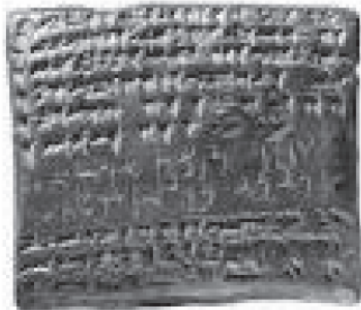
Wheat, barely, fruits and dates were grown in abundance and even exported. In the early period they had barter system

but in the later period they used metal coins. Weaving, dyeing, wood work, pottery, brick making, jewellery, mining and metallurgy were important crafts. Copper, iron, silver, gold and bronze were the metals known to them. They exported Wooden and Fiber clothes, hides, dates etc. They imported various metals. They had trade relations with India and Egypt. Horse and asses were used as means of transport.

Art and Architecture:

As stone was not available in Mesopotamia, we do not find sculpture and architecture as we find in Egypt. Most of the buildings were built with brick and mud. Very few of them have survived. Babylonian king Nebuchadnezzar constructed a palace which is known as the 'Hanging Gardens' of Babylon. It was considered as one of the Eight wonders of ancient world. It was a huge palace with variety of gardens on the roof of it. Mesopotamians were excellent artisans and sculptors. They carved beautiful pictures of eagles and other animals.

Student copybooks and library of clay books of 4000 years old are found. They used flat bricks for writing which is known as 'cuneiform' writing. They composed many myths, legends and poems. Their Epic of Gilgamesh is a rich poetry.



A cuneiform writing.

ACTIVITY: Collect information regarding the seven wonders of Ancient World.

Science and Mathematics

They knew about planets like- Mercury, Jupiter, Venus, Mars and Saturn. They believed that sun and moon influenced the life of men. They had a faith in Astrology which was based on Astronomy. They divided the year into 12 months with 354 days. They followed lunar calendar. Their hour had 60 minutes and a minute had 60 seconds. They knew that a circle had 360 degrees. They did good progress in the field of medicine. Their book 'Materia medica' mentions of 550 medicines prepared of vegetables, minerals and animal products. The book also gives details of various diseases and their symptoms.

Causes for the decline of civilization

- 1) Weak and inefficient rulers often lost control over administration. This led to anarchy.
- 2) Struggle for succession among nobles disturbed the peace and order in the society.
- 3) Invasion by Persians led to the end of this civilization.

Mesopotamia became the part of Persian Empire by 538 B.C.E.

3.4 CHINESE CIVILIZATION

It is very interesting to know that civilizations have developed only in those parts of the world, where it was possible for men to live without too great a struggle and yet not too easily. If natural conditions make life too easy, men become lazy and if life becomes too difficult men will not have strength or leisure to develop a civilization. The conditions of moderate difficulties

are favorable for men to develop intelligence and improve civilization. The river plains of Hwang- Ho in Northern China and Yangtse and Sikiyang in Southern China provided moderate challenges and minimum facilities to develop a civilization.

In the beginning Chinese had tribal societies like elsewhere in the world. It gradually developed into 'feudal society'. In the context of the above discussions there prevailed, such similar condition in India and China, during the period of development of civilisation. China is the oldest civilization which continues till today. Chinese developed a unique civilization by 5000 B.C.E. Not much is known about the remote past. We have fairly clear history from about 1500 B.C.E. It also appears that it developed in isolation to a larger extent. Chinese are always proud of their civilization. Chinese inventions and philosophy influenced human life in several ways.

China is a country of variety of physical features. It lies between Himalayas in the West, Pacific Ocean in the East and Desert in the North. It has a wide variety of flora and fauna. China is inhabited by Mongoloid race.



River basins of China

Political conditions

Early China was ruled by many kings. In the beginning they had a loose federation. In the later stages they had a centralized administration. China has a long standing political history. The mythological sources date political history of China to as early as 4000 years. More than 15 dynasties have ruled China from 2100 B.C.E. to 1911 C.E. But we have substantial sources from 1500 B.C.E.

Dynasties that ruled China

I. Dynasties of Ancient Era.

1. Xia Dynasty 2100-1600 BCE
2. Shang Dynasty 1600-1046 BCE
3. Zhou Dynasty 1045-256 BCE

II. Dynasties of Imperial Era

4. Qin Dynasty 221-206 BCE
5. Han Dynasty BCE 206-220 CE
6. Three kingdoms 220-280 CE (Wei, Shu, Wu)
7. Jin Dynasty 265-420 CE
8. Southern and Northern Dynasties 420-589 CE
9. Sui Dynasty 581-618 CE
10. Tang Dynasty 618-907 CE
11. Age of 10 Kingdoms 907-960 CE
12. Song Dynasty 960-1279 CE
13. Yuan Dynasty 1271-1368 CE
14. Ming Dynasty 1368-1644 CE
15. Manchu or Qing Dynasty 1644-1911 CE

Xia was the earliest dynasty which came into existence in around 2100 B.C.E. and the last was Qing or Manchu which ended in 1911 C.E. The political history of China is classified into two eras 1] Ancient era – 2100 - 221 B.C.E. 2] Imperial era – 221 B.C.E. - 1911 C.E.

The Chou [Zhou] dynasty was the longest serving dynasty. The rulers of this dynasty evolved the theory of the 'Mandate of Heaven'-Divine origin to legitimize their rule. Third and Fourth B.C.E. witnessed the rise of feudal lords who constantly engaged in wars. They were suppressed by the Qin Dynasty. They re-established the dynastic rule. Qin rulers expanded their kingdom into an empire, thus began the Imperial Era.

Shih Hu Wang Ti - the greatest ruler of China belongs to this dynasty. Shih means first and Hu Wang Ti means emperor. He ruled from Chin province and he adopted the name Chin Shih Hu Wang Ti. The name China comes from Chin.

Shih Hu Wang Ti started official census and maintained peace and prosperity. He started the construction of the Great Wall of China to protect his kingdom from the attacks of Huns, Mongols, etc., He, for the first time brought the whole of China under single rule. He introduced uniform laws throughout the country. He divided the country into 36 provinces, appointed civil and military officers to each province. He travelled in disguise to understand the ills and disorders of the empire, constructed roads and canals to connect far flung parts of the empire.

Shi Hu Wang Ti believed that, people are basically

indisciplined. So he introduced strict laws and harsh punishments. The Emperor was for change and against the old order. He tried to control the knowledge by burning books. He patronized scientists but opposed historians. Many scholars who opposed him were buried alive in the Great Wall of China.

Han dynasty replaced Qin dynasty. Wu Ti was the famous ruler of this dynasty. He divided the empire into 13 provinces. He centralized the administration. He was a great patron of art and literature. During his reign thousands of great works on prose, poetry, philosophy, mathematics and medicine were composed. This period is known as The 'Golden Age' of Chinese history.

Han dynasty was replaced by 'Wei Jin' dynasty'. The rulers decentralized the power. Later there was political fragmentation of China for about 400 years. Sui dynasty re-established the empire. Tang dynasty followed Sui's and introduced a system of standard coinage. They brought reforms in administration. The governmental machinery was divided into three parts – the First to draft, second to review and the last to implement the policies. The competitive examinations were conducted for recruiting officials. This period is also known as '**Golden age**' of Chinese history, as there was significant development in the field of art, literature and technology.

Social condition

The Chinese society was a traditional society. It was a male dominated society. Family formed the basis of the society. Parents, especially the mother, inculcated the moral values

among the children. Girls were considered as burden to the family. The position of women was not so high. Any how woman commanded respect based on her fertility, workmanship and obedience.

The Chinese society had four classes based on the nature of work of the people. The top class included officials, scholars and teachers. Second class comprised of farmers. Artists formed the third class, merchants formed the last. Mandarins a small class of people, who were able to read and write Chinese script, enjoyed honor, respect and power, both in the society and the government.

Economic condition

It was an agriculture based society. Canal irrigation was well developed by Chinese. Canals were also used for drainage and navigation. They used agricultural implements made of Iron and Wood. Wheat, rice, soya beans, cereals were the main agricultural crops. Tea and horticultural crops were also grown. They mainly domesticated animals like pigs and sheep. They developed poultry too.

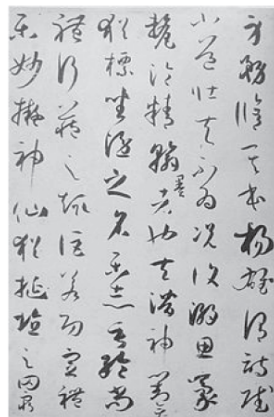
Industry and Crafts

Carpenters, smiths, woodcutters, masons, potters, weavers formed the important craftsmen. Silk was an important contribution of China to the world. It was a major luxury exported from China. China had trade relation with west through a land route via Afghanistan and Persia and also through Indian Ocean which is known as '**Silk Route**'. Chinese learnt to grow cotton

from Indians. Silk, Iron, Tea, Salt and Cotton products were the main items of export. After 10th century Chinese goods dominated international trade. Opium formed the important item of their trade. In the early period Barter was practiced. Later metals were used as medium of exchange. Coined money came to be used in around Fifth Century. B.C.E. Money lending and Banking were practiced in China from Fifth Century. B.C.E.

Learning and literature

Chinese had developed the art of writing during Shang period. Chinese script was standardized during Chin rulers. They have no alphabet and parts of speech. It consists of characters which are more than 40,000. Chinese writing started as pictograph. Later they developed Characters or Logograms. Chinese characters constitute the oldest continuously used systems of writing in the world. Their writing played an important role in cultural unification. Chinese script also influenced Japanese, Korean and Vietnamese scripts. It is written from top to bottom.



Chinese script

The invention of paper, silk and ink for writing helped the growth of writing and literature. The practice of writing history was also popular in China. The rulers got compiled their histories. The Chinese literature comprised prose, poetry, philosophy and history. During Han and Tong dynasties Chinese poetry reached its heights.

The Imperial library of Han dynasty included 3123 volumes of classics, 2705 volumes on philosophy, 868 works on medicine, 1318 volumes of poetry, 2568 volumes of Mathematics and 790 volumes on war aspects. Tai-Li-Po the greatest of Chinese poets wrote 30 volumes of verse. Tu-Fu was also a great poet.

Chinese had developed Geography, Geometry, Arithmetic, Calendars, Astronomy and predicted eclipses.

Important inventions of Chinese

Silk, Tea, Ink, Paper, Brush for painting and writing, Abacus, Acupuncture, Rudder Gun- powder, Glass, Pottery, porcelain and Rockets, Spoon, forks, Umbrella, Seismograph and Mariner Compass, etc are the important contributions of Chinese to the world.

Art and Architecture

Art of Painting: The Chinese had developed wonderful painting. They painted on silk cloth, tomb walls, pots and papers. They believed that Tomb paintings were means to protect the dead and help their souls to go to heaven.

Sculpture: Chinese developed the art of casting bronze statues of animals and monsters. This art developed during

Shangs and Chous. Buddhism influenced the sculpture and the statues of Bodhisatwa carved in stone are found in large number.

Terracotta sculpture: The terracotta army assembled in the tomb of the first Kin emperor, consists of life size images of more than 8000 warriors and horses. They are very attractive.



The Terracotta Army

Architecture

Chinese were massive builders. The Great Wall of China is one of their most impressive and ever-lasting architectural accomplishments. It was purely built for the utilitarian purpose of protecting the country from Huns, Mongolian and other invasions. It is 2380 k-m long, about 22 feet high and 20 feet broad. After every 300 ft, a watch tower of 400 feet high is built. It is one of the wonders of the Ancient world. It was not popular among the Chinese as forced laborers were used to construct it. The portions of the Great wall were rebuilt and restructured by later dynasties. So the wall is still standing.



The Scenes of Great Wall of China

They also built great palaces but none of them survived as they were built in mud and wood. They built Buddhist temples called Pagodas. Important among them are Giant Wild 'Goose Pagoda', 'Jed Pagoda' and the 'Flask Pagoda'. The temple of sleeping Buddha outside Peking-present Beizing is noteworthy.

Philosophy and Religion

Philosophy.

The three philosophers of China- Lao tse, Confucious and Mencius have influenced the religious ideas of Chinese to a greater extent.



Lao-tse

Lao tse: He was a great philosopher. He lived before Confucius in about 600 B.C.E. He worked as a curator in the Royal library of

Chou rulers. He was disgusted with the corrupt political system. Hence he left to the remote part of China and wrote a book called Tao te Ching (The Way of life). His philosophy is known as Taoism. Tao preached Non violence, not to be conservative, Society should respect wise persons, duty with sincerity and honesty and so on. Some of his important sayings are:-

- 1 Violence defeats its own ends.
- 2 Wisdom can never be transmitted by words.
- 3 One should be good to the good and good to evil.
- 4 The things in the nature work silently.
- 5 If you do not quarrel, no one can quarrel with you.

Confucius:



Confucius

Confucius was the greatest of the Chinese philosophers. Born in the kingdom of Lu in 571 B.C.E., he lost his father at the age of 3. He faced lot of difficulties. Confucius learnt archery and music. He married at the age of 19 and gave up family life at the age of 23. He worked in different capacities as language teacher, editor, judge and minister. He proved to be a great

philosopher and teacher.

The philosophy of Confucius is known as 'Confucianism'. The principles of Confucius had basis in common Chinese tradition and beliefs. He taught loyalty towards family, worship of ancestors, respect to elders and unity among the people of China.

His sayings

1. What you do not like when done to yourself, do not do to others. It is considered as golden rule of Confucius.
2. Character is the foundation of society.
3. Wisdom begins at home.
4. The great man acts before he speaks and speaks according to his actions.
5. The society rests on the obedience of children to their parents and of the wife to her husband and the students to their teachers.
6. Excessive taxation and barbaric punishments should be abolished.
7. To see what is right and not to do it, is want of courage or of principle.
8. He wished that unemployed be provided jobs.
9. The government must protect the orphans, the aged, the widows, the diseased and the disabled.



Mencius

Mencius: Another great philosopher of China lived between 372 and 289 B.C.E . His early name was Meng-Tse. He was influenced by the teachings of Confucius. He taught that every person must have equal rights. According to him all the individuals are good. All social evils come due to illiteracy, ignorance and poverty. Any how his teachings could not become popular as of Confucius as his teachings were similar to that of Confucius.

Buddhism

No particular religion was followed by the ancient Chinese. They essentially worshipped the spirits of their ancestors. Buddhism also had a great impact on the life and philosophy of China. Buddhism spread to China from India, during Kanishka's period in First Century.C.E. The Buddhist monks and traders of India popularized Buddhism in China. But it could not develop until the decline of Han dynasty because it strictly practiced Confucian thought. Later Chinese rulers - the Yuan dynasty and the Manchu's used it to connect with the Chinese and justify their rule. During these dynasties Buddhism became the state religion. Even now it is the popular religion of this country and has influenced every aspect of Chinese society.

Questions

Answer in 1 word or 1 sentence (each carries 1 mark)

1. On which river bank did the Egyptian civilization develop?
2. What is the Egyptian writing called as?
3. Who is the first woman empress of the world?
4. Why did Egyptians preserve the dead bodies of their kings?

5. Which is the biggest Pyramid in the world?
6. What is the meaning of Mesopotamia?
7. Who built the Hanging garden?
8. What is a Ziggurat?
9. Who was the greatest ruler of China?
10. Who was the proponent of Taoism?
11. Who popularized Buddhism in china?

Answer in 2 word or 2 sentence (each carries 2 marks)

1. Mention any two important inventions that helped the growth of civilizations.
2. Define civilization.
3. Name any two ancient civilizations.
4. Why are river valleys called the cradles of civilization?
5. Why is Egypt called the 'Gift of Nile'?
6. Name any two Gods and Goddesses of Egypt.
7. Why is Mesopotamia called as 'the cradle and grave' of civilization?
8. Write any two causes responsible for the decline of Mesopotamian civilization.
9. Name the river valley on which Chinese civilization flourished.
10. Who built the Great Wall of China? Why?
11. Mention any two important scientific inventions of Chinese.
12. Name any two important Philosophers of Ancient China.

Answer in 15 - 20 sentence (each carries 5 marks)

1. Define civilization. Distinguish between civilization and culture.

2. Discuss the factors that helped the growth of civilization.
3. Explain the political conditions of Egyptian civilization.
4. Write a short note on learning and literature of Egyptian civilization.
5. Write a note on Art and Architecture of Egyptians.
6. Write a short note on Code of Hammurabi.
7. Write about socio-economic condition of Mesopotamia.
8. Write a note on Confucius and his Philosophy.
9. Write a note on Art and Architecture of China.
10. Write a note on writing and literature of China.

Answer in 30 - 40 sentence (each carries 10 marks)

1. Describe the contributions of Egyptian civilization.
2. Describe the contributions of Mesopotamian civilization.
3. Describe the contributions of Chinese civilization.



Chapter – 4

ESTABLISHMENT OF GREEK AND ROMAN EMPIRES-CONTRIBUTIONS

4.1 GREEK CITY-STATES AND CULTURAL CONTRIBUTIONS :

Introduction: The Greeks laid the foundation to all other civilizations of Europe. As famous Historian Arnold Toynbee says “European Civilization developed in the body of Greek Society like a child in the womb of the mother”. The contribution of Greece to world culture is immense.



Ancient Greece

Geography Of Greece:

Greece or Hellas as the early Greeks called it, is a peninsula of about 25,000 square miles and extends from the mainland of Europe into Mediterranean Sea. It lies between Aegean and

Adriatic and Ionian seas. Geography has very much influenced the Greek civilization. The mainland of Greece is full of rugged mountains. The soil was unsuitable for agriculture. It is a land of chaotic mountain ranges, which divided it into hundreds of small, independent, self centered states. The rivers in Greece are small and unfit for navigation. But it is usually and truly said that “while the mountains separated the Greeks the seas united them”. No place in Greece is more than forty miles away from the sea. The Aegean sea became a ‘Greek lake’ and islands formed stepping – stones to Asia-minor and Egypt. So seas have played an important role in the life and culture of the Greeks.

Hellenes: Greeks were originally called Hellenes because they claimed descent from a common ancestor, Hellenes. The Hellenes later came to be called as Greeks by Italians.

Classical Civilization: The term classical is used to typify the climax in the development of the ancient civilization.

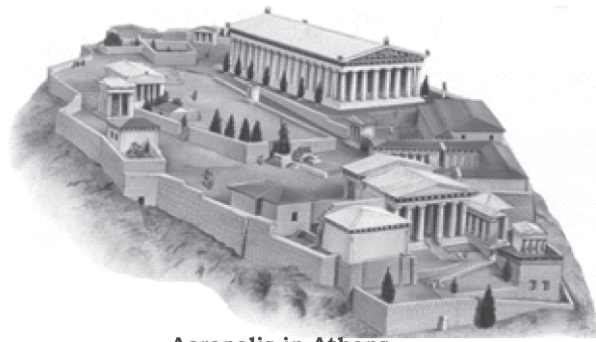
The Early Greeks

The Greeks came from the north, probably from the Danube river valley. They spoke an Indo-European language. Each group that came into the Aegean region had its own name- Aegeans, Ionians and Dorians .Soon all began to call themselves as Hellenes which means Greeks. Initially Greece was not completely occupied by any tribe. The occupation was spread over centuries. From the evidence available, the migrations were well under way by 1400 B.C.E-the early Greeks, like the Aryans in India, lived in tribes, each composed of a number of families under a leader. About 1200 B.C.E. they attacked the city of Troy - a ten year siege. The final destruction of this city was described by Homer, in one of his epic poems ‘Iliad’. Mixed race

developed because of inter marriages between the locals and the conquerors.

City States (Polis)

The city state was the outstanding political achievement of the Greeks. Topographical features of the country and the tribal characteristics of the people were important factors in the development of the city- states. The polis originated as a fortified site but later was interpreted as a sovereign state. It included the fort, the city, and the surrounding country side. Around 800 B.C.E a group of Greek villages began joining into larger units to form city states. At the highest point in a city state, an Acropolis or Citadel was built for defence. And the city spread around the acropolis. Sparta, Athens, Macedonia, Corinth and Thebes were important city-states. Though the Greek city states were independent, jealous and quarrelsome, all the Greeks strongly believed that they were all Hellenes. Another bond which united them was the common language and literature. One more factor that united them was the worship of Gods like Zeus, Appollo and Athena.



Acropolis in Athens

Forms Of Government

At first, the City States were ruled by Monarchs. Each monarch began to govern his city- state with the assistance of a council, consisting of nobles. Then wealthy land owners took over the political power and abolished Monarchy. With the increase in the population of the cities, trade, commerce and industry expanded and middle class developed. This class joined with poor farmers to lessen the power of the land owners. This conflict resulted in the rise of 'dictators' or 'tyrants', as Greeks called them. But there were changes particularly with regard to Sparta and Athens. Sparta turned into military state, her government was ruled by few nobles. Two of these nobles became kings.

Activity: Discuss various forms of governments that were working in City States

Athenian Democracy

Athens registered a remarkable progress in politics, laws, literature, art, science and philosophy. Athenians were fond of trying political experiments. Monarchy and Oligarchy did not suit their temperament. So they discarded them. With the contributions of law- givers viz, Draco, Solon and Cleisthenes, democracy came into existence at Athens.

Draco

Draco, a nobleman, gave the Athenians a written code of laws. The code of Draco provided safety to the people from the tyranny of dishonest and corrupt judges. But Draco's code did little to help the poor farmers who were at the mercy of rich nobles. (The term Draconian law is derived from this context.)

Solon:

Solon, considered to be a wise man introduced constitutional reform of democratic character. He prevented chaos. His laws or reforms liberated the enslaved farmers, declared debt -slavery as illegal, and cancelled all mortgages of land. He helped Athenian merchants by introducing Coin- Currency and encouraged foreign artisans to settle in Athens. He brought about a system by which the people as a whole gained the power of electing their magistrates and judging their work. His reforms benefited both middle and poor class Athenians.

Cleisthenes:

Cleisthenes, from an influential family, broke the power of the ruling clans by granting citizenship rights to male adults. Thus poor people also got the right to vote. He reorganized the state on democratic trend. He ended tribal nature of Government and expanded the constitution. He also tried his best to break the power of the nobility in the assembly.

The Golden Age of Pericles (469-429 B.C.E)

Athenian democracy reached its greatest height, under the leadership of Pericles. He was a great radical in politics. He was the great grandson of Clisthenes. It was he who completed the work of laying the foundation for democracy in Athens. He deprived the 'Arcopagus' (legislative body) of its political powers and transferred the same to the council of five hundred. This body suggested measures to the Acclesia- the assembly. It was freely discussed by all the citizens of Athens and laws were passed. A board of ten generals elected by the assembly acted as a kind of Cabinet. Pericles was the president of this board

for about 15 years. The generals were responsible to the assembly and thus could not become dictators.

Another important feature of the Periclean age was jury system. Every year about 5000 jurors were elected for a term of one year. Being a great lover of democracy, he wanted even the poorest citizens to take interest in political affairs. This is what we call today, the Direct Democracy.

Athens which was destroyed during Persian war, was rebuilt by Pericles. Athens became a centre of progress in art and architecture. Very large public buildings were constructed, which beautified Athens. The famous Parthenon or the temple of Virgin was built of coloured marble stones. It was the most beautiful temple. Pericles also patronized music. To protect his beautiful city from foreign invaders he built “long walls” connecting the city with the port Piraeus.



Parthenon Temple, Athens

The age of Pericles produced great philosophers like Socrates and his pupil, Plato. It was the golden age of Greek plays. Aeschylus, Sophocles and Euripides were great

dramatists who wrote tragic plays. Herodotus (484-424 B.C.E) is regarded as the father of History. Thucycidides (471-400 B.C.E) was another famous historian of the Periclean age. Poets like Sappho and Pindar lived during this period. Hippocrates, who is regarded as 'father of medicine' practiced in this age. Therefore Periclean age of Athens is regarded as the 'school of Hellas' and 'The Golden age'.

Persian and Peloponnesian Wars

In the fifth century B.C.E. the Athenian democracy was engaged in two wars which spelled the end of its greatness. Firstly, Iranian or Persian great king, Darius's invasion. Although the whole of Greece united to fight the Persians the long stretched battle (hence called Marathon battle) ended in the defeat of the Greeks. The Persians burnt the city of Athens. They were finally compelled to withdraw. Secondly the Peloponnesian war (431-404 B.C.E) between Athens and Sparta ended with the victory for the latter. It spelled doom for Athenian democracy. Peloponnesian war marked the beginning of the end of the 'Glory that was Greece'.

Macedonian Empire

While the City States of Greece were quarrelling among themselves, Macedonia, in North-Eastern Greece became an important kingdom under Philip II (359-336 BCE). He was, an able and energetic diplomat and also a soldier. He prepared a plan for a united Greece, to fight the common enemy- the Persian Empire. Before he could execute this plan he was assassinated on the occasion of his daughter's wedding.

Alexander the Great (336-323 B.C.E)

Alexander is one of the greatest names in the history of the world. He owed much to his father Philip II. But he became greater than his father. He wanted to conquer the world. He succeeded his father at the age of 20, and he had been tutored by one of the greatest philosophers, Aristotle. He compelled the entire Greece to accept his leadership with skill and industry. With 35,000 soldiers he marched against the Persian empire. He defeated them in the battles of Granicus, Issus and Arable. Alexander conquered Egypt and built a new city Called 'Alexandria', at the mouth of Nile delta. With this success he marched into India, across the Karakorum Mountains. He defeated king Porus in the battle of 'Hydaspes' or battle of Jhelum (326 B.C.E).He sailed down the Indus , but he could not bring his Indian campaign to a victorious conclusion. The army exhausted, refused to march forward. They were scared of facing the powerful Nandas. His efforts to inspire the soldiers to continue the expeditions became futile. But at the height of his power he died of fever at the age of 33 (323 B.C.E) in Babylon. After his death Civil war went on for forty years and his empire was divided in to three parts under Seleucus, Ptolemy and Antigonus.



1. General Seleucus, who got Persia, later attacked India. But he was defeated by Chandragupta Maurya.
2. Ptolemy ruled Egypt and Phoenicia. He built a temple at Alexandria which was dedicated to Greek Goddess of art, literature and learning. It was known as Museum.

3. Macedonia and Greece came under the control of Antigonus.

Activity: Find out the route of Alexander's invasion of India and its consequences

Alexander's concept of World Empire could not stand the test of time, as it had no firm political or economic basis. Nevertheless he aided in the admirable task of spreading Hellenic civilization. He founded nearly seventy cities. He and his soldiers married Persian women and worshipped Persian Gods. He encouraged Greek merchants to trade with Asiatic countries. A happy union of east and west led to the development of Greece-oriental culture.

Activity: Find out various reasons for the fall of the Greek Civilization.

Cultural Contributions

The Greeks Contributed to human civilization immensely. They believed in the principles of a sound mind in a sound body. They imagined the human body as a thing of beauty and had great curiosity and thirst for knowledge. They made great contribution to literature, sports, philosophy, politics, ethics, science, music, drama, religion, art and architecture. Greek ideology so completely dominated European culture that, the western culture today is predominantly Hellenic in its inspiration and ideal. So the legacy of Greece is vital and universal.

Literature

In the field of literature, Greeks contributed to Epics, Poetry,

Drama and History. Homer was a great poet who wrote two epics, 'Illiad' and 'Odyssey'. These epics give us a fairly faithful account of the social, economic and political conditions of early Greek culture. The shorter Greek poems were called lyrics, because they were sung to the music of the lyre. They were composed to express the emotions of man. Pindar and Sappo were greatest of the lyric poets; the latter was a great poetess.



Homer

Homer was a blind poet. He wandered from city to city singing his two epics, Illiad and Odyssey. These epics narrate the story of an early Greek invasion and destruction of Troy. And also adventures of one of the greatest heroes among the Greeks, Odysseus.

The drama is the most familiar of the Greek forms of literature. The remains of Greek theatres can still be seen all over the Aegean region. The founder of Greek tragedy was Aeschylus, author of 'Prometheus Bound' and 'Agamemnon'. Sophocles, the greatest of the Greek tragedians, wrote 'Oedipus Rex', 'Antigone' and 'Electra'. These plays are admired all over the world even today. Euripides the third of the great tragic poets, believed that, in life people were more important than

Gods. Hence he concerned himself with the passions and emotions of human beings. One of his best known plays is the “Trojan women”. Aristophanes was the greatest comic poet.

Greece produced world’s first great historian Herodotus, described as the ‘father of History’. Another Historian Thucydides, described the war between Sparta and Athens in his famous work ‘Peloponnesian wars’. Plutarch, the later historian was known for his biographies- “Lives of illustrious men” is his famous work.

Oratory is the art of making public speeches. The most famous orator was Demosthenes.

Science

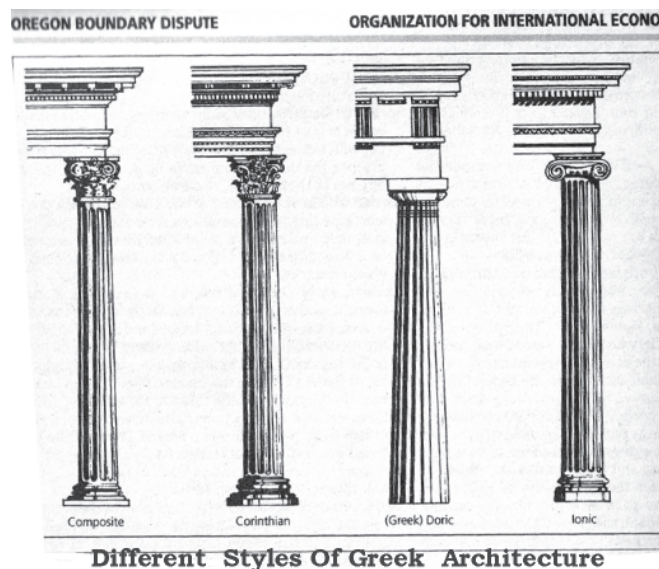
Greek philosophers furnished the impetus for the beginning of the study of science. Aristotle laid the foundation for the study of natural science. Theophrastus, a pupil of Aristotle established Botany as a recognised science. The Periclean age produced great men. Hippocrates laid the foundations of modern medicine. He taught that diseases have a natural origin and not caused by evil spirits, as many believed in those days. He is known as the “father of medicine”. Herophilus is called as the ‘father of anatomy’.

Ptolemy believed that the Earth was the centre of the universe. But Aristarchus propounded the theory that earth and other planets, revolve round the sun. Eratosthenes calculated the approximate circumference of earth with a small

error of 320 kilometers. He also prepared a fairly accurate map of the world and he was the first to suggest that one could reach India from Europe by sailing west. Pythagorus and Euclid made many contributions to mathematics, especially to Geometry. Archimedes was also a famous scientist of ancient Greece.

Art and Architecture:

In the early times, the Greeks used wood, and later they used sun dried bricks and marbles to build the temples. The Greek architecture consists of three styles viz. Doric, Ionic and the Corinthian styles. The Parthenon is said to be the most beautiful temple ever built out of coloured marble stones. We find tall marble statue of Goddess Athena carved by Phidias inside the temple.



The temple consists of 46 doric columns, each 34 feet high. Actinus the famous architect of this temple blended Doric, Ionian and Corinthian styles to make this temple a wonder of the world. It was built by King Pericles. The majestic and beautiful temple is now in ruins.

Alexander's conquest initiated several centuries of cultural exchange between Greece and Central Asia. The Gandhara art in Ancient India developed due to the Greek influence.

The Greeks expressed the human values like beauty and courage in the sculpture. They portrayed naked, well built and muscular bodies. Even Gods were portrayed as human beings. Myron and Phidias were the best known sculptors. Myron is famous for the Statue of Discus Thrower. Greeks also excelled in painting on vases.

In the fifth century CE the Parthenon was used as a Christian church and dedicated to virgin Mary. From 1640 CE it was used as a mosque. In 1687CE, the Turks used it as a store house and it was destroyed by an explosion. In 1801CE Lord Elgin removed some of the ruins to England.

Philosophy

The word Philosophy is derived from the Greek word 'Philosophia' which means "Love of Wisdom". The Greeks thought that philosophy included the study of universe and they attempted to explain its origin and structure. There are many schools of philosophy in Greece. Democritus one of the earliest philosophers, denied the existence of spiritual world or of the soul. The Sophists believed that there was no absolute truth

but looked at every so called truth in relation to its effect on human beings. The most famous philosophers of Greece were Socrates, Plato and Aristotle.

Sophists: It means those who are wise. They were a class of teachers. They said “man is a measure of all things”. Sophists taught the techniques of effective speaking, writing, oratory, rhetoric, arithmetic, geometry and astronomy. They in fact brought philosophy down from Heaven to the Dwellings of men. Gorgias and Protagoras are important sophists.

Socrates (469-399 B.C.E).

Socrates believed that knowledge leads to right conduct and happiness, while ignorance breeds evil. He is one of the best known philosophers and considered as the wisest of the wise. He tried to break down many prejudices of his pupils by his searching questions and discussions. But he was condemned to death on the charge of corrupting the youth and introducing new Gods. Socrates teachings were considered immoral and corrupt by the officials of Athens. He was forced to drink poison-Hamlock.

Plato (427-347B.C.E)

Plato, the most notable disciple of Socrates, founded an ‘academy’ in Athens. His ‘**dialogues**’ contain the teachings of his master. Plato’s greatest work is the ‘Republic’, where he divided the society into three classes. The lowest class consisted of farmers, artisans and merchants. The second class consisted of soldiers, the highest was of philosophers, Intellectuals, who had all the political powers. He had an ambition to establish an ‘Ideal state’. His other work is ‘the Laws’.

Aristotle (384-322 B.C.E)

The greatest of Greek philosophers was Aristotle, a student of Plato at the Academy and he was the teacher of Alexander the great. He was both a philosopher and scientist and wrote on many subjects. That is why he is considered as the 'walking university'. He is regarded as the father of three branches of knowledge viz. 'Philosophy, Biology and Political Science. He said that, 'man is a social animal'. He encouraged constitutional governments, he classified and organized different branches of knowledge- segregating Physics, Metaphysics, Logic and Ethics. His important works are 'The Politics' and 'History of animals'.

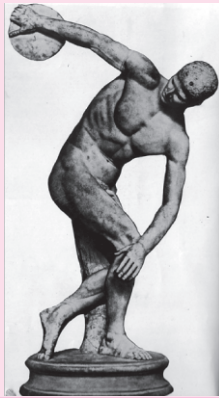
Activity : Prepare biographical sketches of Socrates, Plato and Aristotle.

Religion

Greek ideas and practices in the field of religion were quite different from those of other people in the world. The Greeks did not believe in God. On the other hand, they tended to glorify men who were more powerful and beautiful. The Greek Gods were Twelve Olympians, of them three were very important. Viz.- Zeus, Apollo and Athena. Zeus was the master of Gods and father of men. Apollo was the son of Zeus. Athena was the protectress of cities. They had their Abode at Mount Olympus. Greeks believe that they would often visit the earth. Unlike other religions the Greeks had no established Church or any particular Holy Book.

The Greeks Practiced the celebration of festival Olympia as early as 776 BCE. The oracles were specially sought after to predict events or to pronounce judgment. The Oracle Apollo of Delphi was the most famous.

Twelve Olympians: Zeus, Hera, Poseidon, Ares, Hermes, Hephaestus, Aphrodite, Athena, Apollo, Artemis, Demeter and Hades,



Olympia: The temple of Zeus is situated here. It was buried by earth quakes in the 6th century C.E. It contained some of the finest works of classical art and architecture. The temple contained Giant-statue of the Zeus. It is considered as one of the ancient wonders of the world.

Discus thrower

The Olympics:

The first Olympic Games were held in 776 B.C.E at Olympia, to honour God Zeus. Later it was held once in every four years. The people came from all over Greece and enjoyed poetry, reading and athletics in the open air theatre. The winners were considered as favorites of Gods. The sports consisted of jumping, running, discus throw, javelin throw, and wrestling. The winners were awarded Olive Crowns.

Marathon

Athens defeated the Persians in a battle of Marathon. Philippides, a soldier was sent back to Athens to announce the victory. He ran the distance of 26 miles and 385 yards (42.2 KM) without any break, announced the victory and fell down dead.

To commemorate this event Marathon is included in the Olympic Games.

Questions

Answer in a word or a sentence.(Each carries 1 Mark)

1. Which is the most ancient civilization of Europe?
2. What is the meaning of the word 'Hellenes'?
3. In which civilization do we find City-States?
4. In which city-state of Greece did democracy develop?
5. Whose period is popularly called as the 'Golden age' of Athens?
6. Who is called as the father of Medicine?
7. Between whom was the Peloponnesian wars fought?
8. Name the battle in which Alexander defeated Porus.
9. Which Indian King defeated Seleucus?
10. Who was Euripides?
11. Who is the author of Peloponnesian wars?
12. Who wrote the book 'The Republic'?
13. In which year did the Olympic Games begin?

Answer in two words or two sentences (Each carries 2 Marks)

1. Name any two City- States of ancient Greece.
2. Name any two reforms introduced by Solon.
3. Mention any two reforms of Cleisthenes.
4. Where is Parthenon temple? And who built it?
5. Name any two dramatists of Periclian age.
6. Name any two important Historians of Periclian Age.
7. Name any two battles in which Alexander defeated the Persians.
8. Which are the two works of Homer?
9. Who are the two lyric poets of Greek Civilization?
10. Name the two works of Aeschylus.
11. Mention any two works of Sophocles.
12. Who were the mathematicians of ancient Greece?
13. Mention any two styles of ancient Greek architecture.
14. Mention any two important philosophers of ancient Greece.

15. Mention the two works of Plato.
16. Mention the two works of Aristotle.

Answer in 15 to 20 Sentence. (Each carries 5 Marks)

1. Write a short note on city-states of ancient Greece.
2. Explain briefly how democracy developed in Athens.
3. Why is the Periclean age called as the 'golden age'?
4. What are the contributions of the Greeks to literature?
5. Briefly explain the contribution of the Greeks to science.
6. What are the contributions of the Greeks to Art and architecture?

Answer in 30 to 40 Sentence. (Each carries 10 Marks)

1. Discuss the contributions of Greeks.



4.2 ROMAN REPUBLICS AND LEGACY OF ROMANS

Introduction:

The Romans created the most advanced European civilization of ancient times. They owed much of their knowledge and understanding of the world to the ancient Greeks. They established one of the mightiest empires of ancient world. Romans were empire builders. They contributed greatly to the government, law, politics, literature, art and architecture, religion and engineering.

Geography:

Like Greek civilization, Roman civilization was profoundly influenced by geographical factors. The Tiber river runs through the central parts of the Italian Peninsula. The city of Rome is located on the Bank of this River. The mountains in the north, the Alps and the Seas surrounding on all the three sides have given Italy its natural protection. The Italian peninsula became a centre for splendid cultural development for many centuries.

Early History:

The first inhabitants of Italy came from North Africa, Spain and France. About 2000 BCE, a group of Indo-Europeans called Italics came to Italy through Alpine passes. One of those tribes was Latin. They settled in central Italy, on the banks of river Tiber, called Latium. Later the Greeks settled in South Italy. A group of people known as Etruscans also settled in Italy. The people of Italy were descendants of all these tribes.

History of Rome :

The city of Rome was founded by twin brothers, Romulus and Remus in 753 BCE on the Palatine hill. The language of the ancient Romans, Latin, gets its name from Latium. The city was named Rome (Roma) after Romulus.



She-wolf and two brothers Romulus and Remus

The Etruscans: Their origin is obscure and they settled in around 1000 BCE on Tiber. They were skilled architects and engineers. Romans learnt many things from them. They learnt how to drain swamps to build sewage system and to construct roads.

Romulus and Remus: According to Roman mythology they were the sons of Mars, the god of war. Amulius, who usurped the throne, ordered the babies to be drowned in Tiber. They survived and were suckled by a wolf, before being looked after by a shepherd, Faustus. They built a city on the side of their rescue that is Rome. Romulus killed Remus during a quarrel.

In its early history, Italy faced formidable enemies such as Acquiains, the Etruscans and Volscians. Under the leadership of Romulus their attacks were effectively repulsed. But the Gauls, attacked Rome and the city of Rome was burnt.

Republic or Monarchy was the usual form of government. According to a

Seven Hills on which Rome was built:

1. The Palatine
2. The Capitoline
3. The Caelian
4. The Esquiline
5. The Aventine
6. The Viminal
7. The Quirinal

tradition and writer Livy, Roman Republic was established around 509 BCE. The word 'Republic' is derived from Latin word 'Respublica', which means 'a thing of the people'. Though it was a republic,

the real power was enjoyed by aristocrats – the patricians. The plebeians were the workers, small farmers, artisans', small traders and soldiers. There was always a clash between the two. In this setup, the senate occupied the most important position.

Wars with Carthage:

It was the struggle for the supremacy over the Western Mediterranean region that led to Punic wars (264-146 BCE) between Rome (Republic) and Carthage (near modern Tunis). This was a long drawn conflict.

The first Punic war was basically a naval war, in which Rome emerged triumphant. In the second Punic war Carthage was led by a brilliant general 'Hannibal'. He scored brilliant victories, but could not capture Rome. The Romans adopted a sort of guerilla and delay tactics. Finally Carthagians were decisively beaten. Hannibal committed suicide.

In the Third Punic war Rome invaded Carthagians and totally destroyed them. Rome became the undisputed master of the Mediterranean.

Rise of Dictatorship in Rome:

The city of Rome expanded into an empire. But still it was called Rome. In the Senate a powerful Oligarchy dominated. Misgovernment and despotism became common features in parts of the empire. The Roman army which was now professional created super Generals like Marius, Sulla, Pompey and Caesar. Marius was the first of the new leaders of Rome. He became a dictator of Rome and one man rule took root with him. After Marius it was the turn of Sulla and he acted like a Monarch. Then came the 'first Triumvirate' (Trio), Crassus, Pompey and Caesar.

GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR: 48-44 BCE



Julius Caesar was a great general, dictator, reformer and the symbol of Ancient Rome. He was bold and powerful. By this time there emerged the first Triumvirate (Three men). Viz. Pompey, Julius Caesar and Crassus. Pompey was a trained soldier and a Consul. Julius Caesar-Commander and a Consul, Crassus-a wealthy nobleman. The three divided the empire among themselves -Caesar in Gaul, Crassus in Parthia (Iran) and Pompey in Spain ruled the Roman empire. The Triumvirate disintegrated after Crassus's death. Crassus had acted as a mediator between Caesar and Pompey. Without Crassus, the two generals began to fight for power. After being victorious in several battles in Gaul (Modern France and Belgium) and Britain, Caesar sent frequent reports to Rome about his victories. Then

he advanced towards east and over threw his opponents in Asia Minor. This was the occasion, he sent his famous message to the senate “Vini, Vidi Vici” “I came, I saw, I conquered”.

Pompey looked upon Caesar’s progress with suspicion and envy. Caesar was asked by Pompey to return home without his army. Caesar forestalled Pompey, reached Rome and defeated Pompey at Pharsalus. He further chased Pompey to Egypt where he was killed. Egypt under Queen Cleopatra became an ally of Rome. (Caesar was temporarily attracted by Cleopatra). Later Caesar became dictator of Rome. But he was murdered in 44 BCE by Liberators-headed by Brutus in a senate meeting.

Caesar brought about many changes in Roman administration and introduced civil reforms. He combined in himself a number of supreme offices, increased the strength of the Senate and reduced its power. He distributed public lands and provided employment to the poor. Caesar extended citizenship rights to provincial subjects and organized Italian towns on the model of Rome.

His other reforms included improvement in agriculture, reduction of taxes, removal of corrupt and oppressive governors, and improving the coinage system. He introduced the Julian Calendar. He was also a great orator and a writer. His name became a prototype to later titles like, ‘Kaiser and Czar’.

Activity:

Collect more information about death of Julius Caesar and role of Brutus and others.

Augustus Caesar: (29 BCE TO 15 CE)

He was a great ruler and a wise statesman. After several years of political turmoil Rome enjoyed more than three decades of peace. He not only built an empire but also was a great patron of art and literature. His age is called as the 'Golden age' in the history of Rome.

Julius Caesar's assassination caused great political and social turmoil in Rome. The power passed into the hands of Mark Antony (Caesar's friend and colleague), Lepidus (Caesar's deputy) and Octavian (Caesar's grand-nephew). These three legally established the 'second Triumvirate'. They attempted to hunt down all those who had conspired against Julius Caesar. Brutus and Cassius, the conspirators fled and organized a large army. But finally they were defeated in the battle of 'Philippi' and killed. Several senators were executed and their property was confiscated because of their support to the Conspirators. The Triumvirate divided the empire among themselves-Lepidus was in charge of Africa, Antony in the eastern province and Octavian remained in Italy and controlled Gaul (France and Belgium). However, the relationship between Octavian and Antony deteriorated. Lepidus was forced to retire (after betraying Octavian in Sicily). Antony was living in Egypt with Cleopatra, the queen of Egypt. His affair with Cleopatra was seen as an act of treason, since she was the queen of another country. The war broke out between Octavian and Antony. In the battle of 'Actium' (31 BCE) Antony was defeated. Antony and Cleopatra committed suicide. With the conquest of Egypt, a new Era began for Romans. By

27 BCE, Octavian was the sole Roman leader. This was the beginning of the Roman Era. His leadership brought the zenith to Roman civilization that lasted for two centuries. He ruled the Roman empire for 44 years with the titles 'Augustus' ('holy' or 'dignity'), 'Imperator' ('Victorious general') and Princeps ('first citizen of the state'). The government established by him was known as the- 'Principate'- 'Government by the first citizen'.

Augustus did not disturb the power of the Senate. But in practice his powers were readily upheld by senate until he became an absolute emperor. Augustus introduced many reforms which had far reaching consequences in Rome. He gave, "a centre to the system, a chief to the civil service, a head to the army, a sovereign to the subjects, a protector to the provinces and peace to the empire".

He recognized the government of the conquered territories, stopped plunder and corruption and strengthened law and order. New courts, and postal services were established. Augustus continued the calendar promoted by Julius Caesar and the month 'August' is named after him. The emperor kept the poor people happy by supplying food grains. He spent money lavishly on construction of public buildings, roads, bridges and fountains. Due to the construction of roads Rome became the nerve centre of trade and commerce in the Mediterranean world.

He maintained diplomatic and commercial contacts with a number of countries including India and China. It is said that he found Rome, a city of bricks and turned it into a city of marbles. His age was illuminated by great generals like Agrippa and Maecenas and writers, poets and historians like Livy,

Horace, Virgil, Ovid, Pliny and Tacitus. It is obvious that Jesus Christ was born during his reign.

Augustan age is popularly called the 'Golden age' in the history of Rome. It was known for peace and prosperity. This period is known as 'Pax Romana' or Roman peace. He gave the idea of the 'World State'. His imperial system lasted for nearly 500 years and saved the great treasures of Greeco-Roman civilization.

Rise of Eastern Roman Empire:

Most of the immediate successors of Augustus were weak and tyrants. Marcus Aurelius (161 to 180 C E) was one of the



capable rulers. But his successors were incompetent. The bad emperors included Caligula and Nero. The latter murdered many, including his wife and mother. The decline of Roman civilization was to some extent checked by Diocletian and his successors. Constantine (306-337 CE) shifted the capital to

Constantinople (330 CE), a city named after him. It was built on the ancient site of Byzantium. Today it is called Istanbul, located in Turkey. He issued the edict of Milan, which granted liberty to Christians to profess their religion, and began the Christianization of the empire.

Justinian (527-565 CE) was the last great emperor who had control over eastern and western halves of the empire. His long-lasting achievements were the 'Justinian code' and his buildings in Constantinople. The eastern Roman Empire with Constantinople as its capital continued to exist till it was overthrown by the Turks in 1453 CE.

Holy Roman Empire:



The downfall of the Roman Empire resulted in great confusion in Western Europe. It gave rise to a large number of small states. In about 800 CE Charlemagne founded an empire that included France, Germany and a part of Italy. Holy Roman Empire was founded when the German king Otto I was crowned in Rome. Some historians date it back to Charlemagne.

He is claimed to be the temporal sovereign of Christians, ruling in co-operation with the pope. In 1806, Napoleon finally abolished the Holy Roman Empire.

Legacy of Romans:

It is no exaggeration to say that, 'were it not for the Romans, the Greek culture would not have spread to the western world'. It is said that Rome conquered Greece militarily and Greece conquered Rome intellectually. Directly or indirectly the Romans acted as agents. But Rome made its own distinct contributions such as formation of republics and governments, laws, principles of taxation, citizenship, rights, hospitals, sanitation systems and construction of public buildings.

Pax Romana (Roman Peace):

The Roman Empire covered a vast stretch of territory that touched three continents, Europe, Asia and Africa. The establishment of the Empire brought about great peace called Pax Romana, which made the growth of Roman civilization possible. Rome gave peace to the entire Mediterranean world by the might of its army. Before the emergence of this empire, the above said area was a place of wars and battles among many petty rulers.

For about two centuries from Augustus to Marcus Aurelius (29 BCE to 180 C.E), the empire enjoyed peace. As a result, trade and commerce flourished. People began to lead a prosperous life because of peace and prosperity. Cities were built, temples were constructed and remarkable development took place. Roman citizenship was granted to all those who came under the hegemony of Rome. It was a guarantee enough for them to be treated on par with all the others.

World State- The Idea of a 'world state' may have originated from Alexander, the Great. But it was the Romans who gave the first practical demonstration of the idea of World State. They introduced a uniform system of administration and common laws. Today people of former Roman domains live in approximately 30 different countries.

Roman Law

The most outstanding intellectual contribution of Romans was the formation of a body of laws. Their laws have made profound impact on almost all the civilized nations of the world

today. It was largely their system of law and administration that enabled the Romans to maintain order over a vast empire which the Greeks were unable to do. Laws encouraged travel and boosted trade. English words 'law', 'legal', 'legislation', 'Justice', 'equality' and 'judge', all have been derived from Latin. Much of the early laws were interpreted by priests. The first written code came in the form of **Twelve Tables** in 150 BCE. In order to keep abreast of changing economic conditions, the commercial transactions were legalized. It established among the citizens of Rome, equality before the law. Roman law can be divided into two parts.

- (a) The Jus-civili law, which applied only to Roman citizens.
- (b) Jus Gentium, originally applying to foreigner in Rome and to others within Roman lands, who were not given citizenship. The Roman laws came to be completely classified and codified by the great Roman emperor Justinian. (527-565 CE) So, Rome saw a series of legal reforms and creation of principles of legal science. Practically all the later legal systems - from the common law of England to Napoleonic code owed much to the Roman legal systems.

Corpus Juris Civilis

Justinian code is known as '**Corpus Juris Civilis**'. A commission of 10 learned jurists and lawyers actually completed the task for the emperor. The code had four important parts viz; (a) The code, containing the imperial ordinances or the statute law then in force (b) The Digest, contained the opinion of the jury consuls, the quintessence of Roman legal opinion (c) The institutes, then included a critical analysis of law, was intended as a text book for law students (d). The Novels, provided for modifications of and editions to the code. No distinction was made between man and woman. Thus the concept of equality before law was emphasized. The 'canon law' of the Roman catholic church was to a great extent influenced by the Corpus Juris Civilis.

Language and literature:

Latin was the language of ancient Roman Empire. It belongs to the family of Indo-European languages. The native sons of Latium saw the superiority of the Greek languages and proceeded to use its style, formulating their own. Before the fall of Rome, Latin became the accepted language of much of the civilized world. Latin remained the language of the church, science, medicine, law and education. It was used for most of the written transactions in Europe, throughout the middle ages.

In the field of literature, the Romans tried to imitate the Greeks. The 'Golden Age' of Latin literature was heralded in the prose works of Cicero and the Poetry of Catullus and Lucretius. Julius Caesar wrote 'Gallic Wars' and 'Civil Wars'.

The dawn of Augustinian age, saw writings of Virgil, Horace, Livy and Ovid. Virgil has been given the title, the most splendid “Voice of Rome”. He wrote ‘Aeneid’. Augustinian age saw the lyrics of Horace and the ‘Natural History’ of Livy. Livy’s another great work is “History of Rome”. The ‘Silver Age’ (198 BCE - 138 CE) saw the tragedies of Seneca, the satire of Juvenal and the skeptical Histories of Tacitus. Tacitus also wrote ‘Annals’ and ‘Histories’. Pliny, the Elder wrote the ‘Natural History’. The other well known Historians were Sallust and Plutarch. Marcus Aurelius wrote ‘Meditation’ and was a great orator on philosophy.

VIRGIL 70-19 BCE: His great epic is Aeneid- His writing is appreciated all over the world. It recounts the adventures of Aeneas, after the battle of Troy and also refers to the foundation of the city of Rome. His other collections of poems are Bucolics and Georgics.

Science:

Roman contributions in science were very limited. Most of the conclusions reached by Roman scientists were philosophical, and not the result of careful experimentation. They were the first to provide free medicine to poor patients. They maintained personal cleanliness, and for this purpose they built baths. They constructed hospitals and patients were treated by qualified physicians.



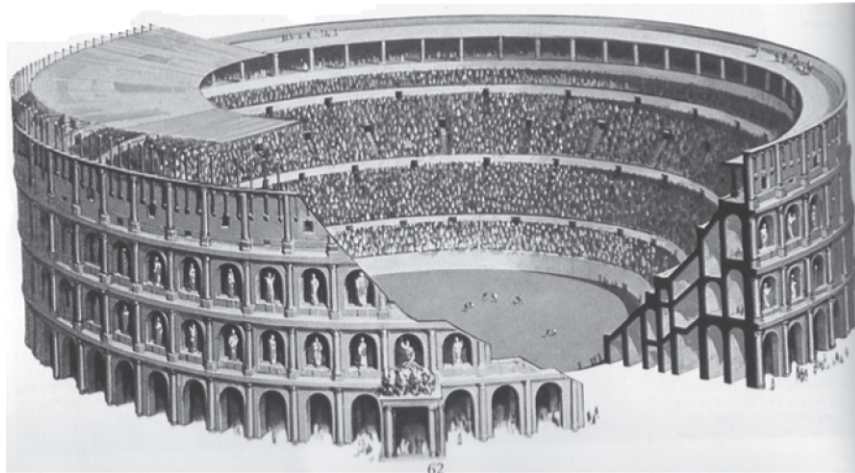
Public Baths in Rome

The greatest physician was Galen (130-200 CE) He wrote on human anatomy and physiology. The knowledge of human anatomy enabled them to conduct operations and to remove goiters and tonsils. Galen was one of the first to discover the circulation of blood. The natural history of Pliny is a large Compendium of all known science. Aretacus was the first to describe diabetes and diphtheria. The Romans borrowed the Etruscan rotation system, but it was not developed much above the level of arithmetic. Roman numerals I -X..... are still used today. The ancient Romans used numerals for commercial mathematics.

Galen : He was the greatest authority on medicine. Galen made a scientific study of many parts of the human body, like heart and spinal cord. He wrote more than 500 works on Anatomy and physiology. In addition to medicine he wrote on Logic, Grammar and Ethics.

Art and Architecture.

The Romans were stupendous builders. Temples, theaters, fine public buildings, baths and homes were built in large numbers. Pompey's Theatre (55 BCE) was a magnificent structure. Augustus erected the imperial palace on the palatine -one of the Seven Hills of Rome. Vespasian built the coliseum where, gladiatorial contests were held. Probably the most famous and best preserved of Roman buildings is the Pantheon. It was originally built during the time of Augustus and it was fully rebuilt during the time of Hadrian. Justinian church of Saint Sophia at Constantinople is still regarded as the most magnificent building of its kind in the near east.



Coliseum

It was Amphitheatre in Rome. It was built in 80CE by emperor Vespasian. It can accommodate about 50,000 people. Citizens of Rome came here to watch Gladiators fight or the slaying of Christians by the hungry lions.

They were the inventors of concrete. They also introduced two architectural improvements (a) the Arch (b) Cupolas or Domes. Water system and roads are examples of Roman engineering. Frontinus wrote a pioneer work on engineering.

The Romans developed their sculpture on Greek models. Buildings were decorated with sculptures and reliefs. However much of the sculptures depicted Emperors, placed in city squares as symbols of their authority and power. The “unknown Roman” is the best known example of their sculpture.

Most of the Roman paintings have disappeared. The best of the surviving murals are found in Pompeii. The art of painting was revived through Christian influence in church frescoes in the later period.

Roads: Romans built nearly 12,000 miles of very good, well paved highways. Some of the more important routes bore names like Via Appia, Via Latina and Via Valeria. The roads, were built primarily for the movement of armies. They were also used for trade with distant parts of world, including China and India. So complete was Rome's system of roads linking all parts of the empire that people could say 'all roads lead to Rome' .

Glossary

Gladiator: The term used for those slaves in ancient Rome who were trained to fight against men or beasts in the arenas for the pleasures of spectators.

Questions

Answer in a word or a sentence (Each carries 1 Mark)

1. On which river bank did the Roman civilization develop?
2. When was the Roman Republic established?
3. From which word is the name 'Rome' derived?
4. The word 'Republic' is derived from which Latin word?
5. Who was Hannibal?
6. Who became the first dictator of Rome?
7. Who acted as a Mediator between Julius Caesar and Pompey?
8. Whose famous words are "Vini, Vidi, Vici"?
9. Which was the battle in which Julius Caesar defeated Pompey?
10. Who was Cleopatra?
11. Who was the person responsible for the murder of Julius Caesar?
12. Name the greatest ruler of Roman Empire.
13. What was the original name of Augustus Caesar?
14. What is the meaning of Augustus?

15. Who was the emperor of Rome when Jesus Christ was born?
16. Who shifted the capital of Roman Empire to Constantinople?
17. What is the modern name for Constantinople?
18. What is Justinian famous for ?
19. Who was the greatest physician of Ancient Roman Empire?
20. Who was the first person to describe Diabetes and diphtheria?
21. Who built Saint Sophia church at Constantinople?

Answer in 2 words or 2 sentences (Each carries 2 Marks)

1. Who founded the city of Rome?
2. Name the 'first Triumvirate' of Roman Civilization.
3. Which are the books written by Julius Caesar?
4. Name any two reforms introduced by Julius Caesar.
5. Who are popularly called the 'second Triumvirate'?
6. What is coliseum?
7. Mention the two important generals of Augustus Caesar.
8. Name any four poets or writers who adorned the court of Augustus.
9. What is Pax Romana?
10. What are Twelve Tables?
11. What is Jus-Gentium?
12. Name any two historians of ancient Rome.

Answer in 15 to 20 Sentences (Each carries 5 Marks)

1. Explain briefly the Roman wars with Carthage.
2. Write a short note on Julius Caesar.
3. Explain briefly the rise of Eastern Roman Empire.
4. What is Pax Romana? Explain.
5. Write a short note on Roman law.
6. What are the contributions of Romans to language and literature?

7. Explain briefly the contributions of Romans to science.
8. What are the contributions of Ancient Romans to art and architecture?

Answer in 30 to 40 Sentences (Each carries 10 Marks)

1. Explain the life and achievement of Augustus Caesar.
2. Describe the contributions of Roman Civilization.

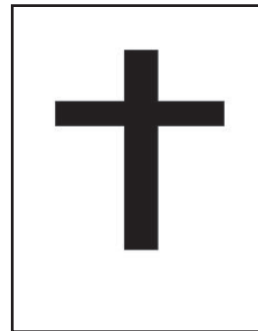


Chapter 5

Rise and Spread of Christianity and Islam

5.1 Christianity

Background: Christianity is a major religion in the world, with a following of 33% of the world's population. Hence people call it as a world religion. The founder of Christianity is Jesus Christ. His followers are called as Christians. **Cross is the Emblem** of Christianity. It has its roots in '**Judaism**,' the religion of the Jews. They were at Israel, ruled by the Roman Empire, they became the slaves of Romans. Jews worshipped Roman deities and did not have their own religious base.



**Symbol of
Christianity**

The Old Testament or the Hebrew Bible of the Jews is accepted by Christianity. The Jews are also called as Hebrews in Israel (Judea). They worshipped one God **Jehovah** and opposed idol worship. 'Jerusalem' was their religious centre. The Old Testament contains the teachings, principles and religious experiences of the Jews. The Ten Commandments which the Jewish prophet '**Moses**' received from God was later incorporated into Christianity.

Ten commandments of Moses:- love, service, sacrifice, equality, justice, mercy, forgiveness, sincerity, humility and fraternity.

Life of Jesus Christ (4 BCE-30 CE)

The founder of Christianity was Jesus Christ. He was a Jew, born on 25th December 4 B.C.E. at **Bethlehem** in **Judea**. **Joseph** and **Virgin** Mary were his parents. His father was a carpenter by profession at Nazareth. According to New Testament, when Jesus was born, a star was shining in the East that was called “**Star of East**”. The birth of Jesus and the simultaneous appearance of the Eastern Star made the priests to believe that, Jesus was a Divine Entity. So they began to worship him. He spent almost 25 years of his life in Nazareth in the province of Galilee and hence was called Jesus of Nazareth.

As Jesus grew up, he learnt the profession of his father and also grazed the sheep. He led a simple life and was associated with poor. Jesus, at the age of 12, went to a Jewish synagogue. He surprised the people by expounding them the meaning of Religious texts which people had failed to understand. Jesus was profoundly influenced by John the **Baptist**. John Baptist told his people that Messiah would arrive to deliver, and relieve them from sinful life. Jesus was also baptised by John at the age of 30. After his baptism Jesus started a new life. He became a wandering preacher.

He spent the rest of his life, preaching about fatherhood of God, where they would set justice, love and kindness. His simple teachings gathered people around him. He travelled in and around **Judea** with his 12 disciples. He conveyed his message in the form of Parables. He led a simple life and mixed freely with the poor. He always helped the sick and the oppressed. His disciples recognized him as Messiah. Some of his teachings questioned some of the Jewish laws. He spoke of the kingdom of ‘Righteousness’ (heaven), a purely spiritual concept which

was mistaken by many as a Worldly Kingdom. Jesus called himself as 'Son of God' which enraged the orthodox Jews.

By his virtuous religious and spiritual thoughts Jesus became 'Christ'. Christ means '**Anointed one**'. Popularity of Jesus caused alarm and suspicion among the orthodox Jews. He condemned blind Hebrew customs. He said love of justice, humility and obedience to the will of God were the gateway to heaven. Jesus did not hesitate to criticize the Jewish religious teachers for their worldliness, so they became his enemies. King Herod or Pontius Pilate condemned him as false prophet. Unfortunately Romans believed that his growing popularity was a cause for public disturbance. He was brought in front of Pilate, the Roman governor, who held him guilty of blasphemy and treason and sentenced him to death.



Crucifixion of Jesus

HIS CRUCIFICATION: (30 C.E) Jesus preached fatherhood of God and brotherhood of men (fraternity). He baptised those who sincerely repented for their sins. He criticized worship of Jehovah. In 30 CE. Jesus visited Jerusalem on the occasion of Jewish Passover and gave an opportunity to his enemies to hatch a plot to kill him. Jesus had his last supper with his disciples. When Jesus was praying in Garden of Gethsemane the temple guard arrested him. Jesus was dragged to **Mount Calvary** at **Golgotha**, a hill near Jerusalem. Jesus was crucified along with two thieves of Golgotha. Jesus was nailed to a Cross. This is called as crucifixion. According to the Bible Jesus was not enraged. While being nailed to the cross he said, "Father, forgive them, for they know not what they do". These words of

Jesus stir the hearts of the people of all religions. Jesus is ever remembered because of such virtues.

Resurrection of Jesus: Jesus was crucified on Friday 3rd April 30 C.E. The crucifixion day is celebrated as Good Friday every year. His followers wept on Jesus' grave. It is believed that Christ rose to life on the third day(Sunday) after the death. This day is celebrated as **Easter**. This event is called as Resurrection of Christ. After the Resurrection Jesus remained with his disciples for 40 days and then ascended into heaven. There by he is said to have proved that he was the Son of God. The day of resurrection is one of the important days for every Christian.

Teachings: The teachings of Jesus are found in the holy book of Christians, the '**Bible**'. The Bible consists of two parts. The Old Testament and The New Testament. The Old Testament is a sacred book of the Jews. The New Testament is the **Gospels** written by four disciples of Jesus, viz St. Mathew, St. Mark, St. Luke and St. John. The Gospels deal with



Resurrection of Jesus

biography of Jesus and his teachings. The important teachings of Jesus are as follows.

- 1) Jesus preached the existence of one God. We are his Sons. God is omnipotent, the king of heaven. He is merciful.

- 2) Jesus preached fatherhood of God and brotherhood of men. Men should live like brothers and be devoted to God.
- 3) Jesus believed in forgiveness. He emphasized upon love towards Mankind. He insisted on justice, humility and duty. He said, "Love your neighbours, love your enemies, bless them who curse you and do Good to those who hate you and pray for them".
- 4) According to Jesus, humility, purity of heart, sincerity and fulfillment of duty were the gateway to heaven.
- 5) To become perfect one should give up worldly richness. Those who have mercy will reach the kingdom of heaven. One must follow simple ceremonies.
- 6) Jesus said, "Service to people is service to God". Such service is a tool for spiritual achievements.
- 7) Spiritual message of Jesus to his followers is given in the form of sermon- "**The Sermon on the Mount**". It runs as follows.
 - i. Blessed are the poor in spirit, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.
 - ii. Blessed are they that mourn, for they shall be comforted.
- 8) Jesus gave the message of love and compassion. He said, 'do not commit adultery, 'do not steal, and give respect to elders'. These are simple paths to emancipation.
- 9) Jesus believed in the kingdom of heaven. There is no discrimination in the kingdom of God, like poor-rich, slave-helpless, superior-inferior, orphan-untouchable etc.

- 10) Forgiveness is a great virtue, such persons are close to God. Thus Jesus preached simple principles which are helpful to mankind, to achieve salvation.

Spread of Christianity:

By its simplicity, the religion became popular all over the world. After the death of Jesus his disciples began to propagate this faith.

1. Personality of Jesus:

The Simplicity of Jesus attracted common people. His appeal towards poor, sinners and sufferers and his spiritual power helped in the spread of religion.

2. Simple principles:

Jesus' principles like fraternity, compassion, forgiveness and faith in the kingdom of heaven- all these made Jesus popular among poor and the slaves.

3. Role of Apostles:

12 Apostles played a dominant role in spreading Christianity by popularising the principles of Jesus. Among them St. Peter and St Paul are important. St Peter founded a church at Rome and became the first Pope to spread Christianity in Rome and Asia Minor. St Peter was executed by Nero- the emperor of Rome which made him a martyr. **St. Paul** became the second pope. He spread Christianity in Greece, Rome, Macedonia, Athens, Philippi and Damascus. He established churches to propagate the principles of Jesus. He is called as 'Second Jesus'.

The martyrdom inspired many like St Mathew, St Mark, St Luke and St John. They consolidated the **Gospels** of Jesus. The efforts of St. Augustine in England, St. Patric in Ireland, and St. Boniface in Germany led to the spread of Christianity.

12 disciples: Peter, Paul, Andrew, John, Thomas, Mathew, Mark, Luke, Judas James, Simon and Bartholomew

4) **Conviction of Christians:**

Christians refused to worship the Roman emperors as God. They did not believe in the divinity of the emperor. Emperors like Nero, Trajan, Marcus, Aurelius, Diocletian persecuted Christians ruthlessly. In 64.C.E. Rome caught fire. For this incident Nero held Christians responsible and massacred many Christians. During Nero and Diocletian thousands of them were thrown before hungry lions. In spite of this Christianity did not suffer. Christianity preaches love for cruelty, compassion for non compassion. Rome could not destroy this religion, instead it accepted Christianity as state religion.

5) **Role of Church:**

The Church became the chief institute for the preservation and propagation of the faith. People believed church as way to Heaven and Pope as representative of God. Despite persecution, Christianity gained popularity.

6) **Role of Constantine:**

The persecution of the Christians stopped when Constantine became the emperor of Rome. Constantine

recognized Christianity. He built a new city called Constantinople and dedicated it to **Virgin Mary**. He gave permission to the missionaries to spread Christianity in the East. On the graveyard of St. Peter at Rome he built St. Peter's church. He issued the **Edict of Milan** 313 C.E. to make Christianity a legal religion in the Roman Empire. He embraced Christianity publicly. Under the Emperor Theodisius of 4th century C.E. Christianity became the state religion. He also abolished the practice of Paganism.

By 5th century C.E. Europe was Christianized. Rome became the seat of the Pope, the spiritual head of Christian religion.

Christianity in India:

Christianity came to India about 2000 years ago. **St. Thomas**, one of the twelve apostles arrived in India in 78 C.E, to spread the message of Jesus and carried his work in Malabar. European navigators who came to India in modern times for trade and commerce were always accompanied by Missionaries. Mention can be made of St. Francis Xavier who spread Christianity in Kerala, Goa and Tamilnadu in the 16th century C.E. He built St. Xavier's church at Goa to spread Christianity in India.

Sects of Christianity: An important development that took place later in the history of Christianity is the Reformation Movement. It was a religious movement within the Church of Rome, to cleanse the church of various evils. The movement was led by Martin Luther from Germany. Because of this Christianity split into two Sects 1. Roman Catholics and 2. Protestants

- 1) Roman Catholics are faithful to Pope and believe Church as gate way of heaven and the Pope as the representative of God.
- 2) Protestants are Christians opposed to the evils of church and the followers of Martin Luther.

Festivals: Three days are celebrated as festivals by Christians

1. Birth day of Jesus– Christmas
2. The day of crucification of Jesus– Good Friday
3. Resurrection of Jesus– Easter

Influence of Christianity:

This religion gave a cultural and religious framework to Jews. Its influence has been seen in all aspects of life. Christianity did much to civilize the people. It taught them virtue of humanity, tenderness and mercy. It brought the ideas of fatherhood of God and brotherhood of man which led to world peace and co-operation. It stressed on Dignity of labour. Sunday and special festivals are treated as holidays. The poor, sick and disabled are receiving greater care. Large number of hospitals and Educational institutions were built. In the name of Jesus, Christian Era began from 1.C.E. Beautiful churches and cathedrals were built in Greeco Roman style. This religion also raised the position of women.

Glossary:

1. **Pagan Gods:** Jews worshipped Roman Gods and Goddess like ‘Jupiter’-sky God, one of the important male Gods. ‘Juno’- worshipped as mother Goddess, ‘Mars’- God of wars, ‘Venus’- Goddess of Love and Neptune- God of Ocean.

2. **Synagogue:** It was a religious building, where Jewish people met for religious worship and instructions.
3. **Gospel:** Teachings of Jesus Or Revelations of Jesus Christ.
4. **Blasphemy:** One who is disrespectful to God OR dishonors the sacred faiths of Particular community.
5. **Baptized:** One who accepted the Spirituality.

Questions

Answer in one word Or one sentence. (Each carries one Mark)

1. Which is the biggest Religion in the World?
2. Who was the founder of Christianity?
3. Which is the emblem of Christianity?
4. Which was the religious centre of Jews?
5. Which God was worshipped by Jews?
6. Which was the religious text of Jews?
7. Who was the religious Prophet of Jews?
8. When was Jesus Christ born?
9. Where was Jesus born?
10. What do you mean by Christ?
11. On which hill was Jesus crucified?
12. What is Easter Sunday?
13. Which part of the Bible contains the teachings of Jesus?
14. What was Milan Edict?
15. Who was the first Roman emperor to accept Christianity?
16. Who was the Roman emperor to declare Christianity as National religion?

17. Who was the first Christian Missionary who came to India to spread Christianity?

Answer in two words Or two sentences. (Each carries 2 Marks)

1. Who were the parents of Jesus?
2. Which are the two Parts of Bible?
3. When was Jesus crucified? Who was the Roman Governor at that time?
4. What was Resurrection of Jesus?
5. Name the two important disciples of Jesus.
6. Name the two Roman Emperors who tortured Christians?
7. Who issued Milan Edict? When?
8. Who were the two Roman emperors who gave royal patronage to Christianity?
9. Which are the important Festivals of Christians?
10. Which are the two sects of Christianity?

Answer in 15to 20 sentences. (Each carries 5 Marks)

1. Write about the life history of Jesus.
2. Explain the teachings of Jesus Christ.
3. Which were the important causes for the spread of Christianity?



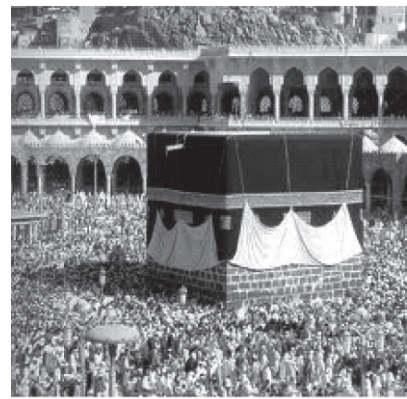
5.2. ISLAM

Background: Islam is one of the important religions of the world. Islam rose from Arabian Peninsula, situated in South West Asia. This land was inhabited by Arabs. The land was a desert.

Mecca and Madina were the only two important cities in Arabia. As Rainfall was scanty, cultivation was not possible. So 80% of Arabs were nomads. They tended

camels. They provided them milk and meat. They cultivated **dates, apricots, pomegranates, lemons, orange and bananas**. **Camel** and **horse** were means of transport. They led a hard life. Quarrels between one tribe and another for **Oasis** and fodder were the order of the day. The Camels were used to carry goods from North Syria and Iraq to South coast of Arabia. People were socially and economically backward. Tribes looted the commercial caravans and plundered cities. Theft, robbery and gambling were common.

They worshipped more than 360 idols. Blind faith and animal sacrifice existed in the society. In spite of these ugly traits, Arabs were held together by a common faith the shrine of **Khaba** at **Mecca**. The Khaba temple was built by Abraham, in 6th century C.E. for the black stone he received from Arch Angel-Gabriel. They



Khaba Stone



Symbol of Islam

did not have a common social, moral, cultural and religious frame work. It was at this time **Mohammed** founded Islam.

Through Islam he organized Muslims under single religious framework. '**Star and Crescent**' is the **symbol of Islam**. **Mosque** is the religious centre. 18% of the world's population follows Islam. Islam is the second biggest religion in the world. '**Quran**' is its holy book.

Life of Prophet Mohammed 570-632 C.E.:- Mohammed was born in 570 C.E. at **Mecca** in Arabia. **Abdullah** and **Ameena** were his parents. He belonged to '**Quareshi**' tribe of Mecca. Mohammed lost his parents early in his child hood. He was brought up by his uncle **Abu-Talib**. Due to poverty, he could not receive any formal education, but he was trained to look after sheep and camels. Mohammed was known to many for his honesty and sincerity. As a youth he spent most of his time in travelling with caravans. The co-merchants called him as '**Amin**'- one who is reliable.

At the age of 25, he entered the service of a rich woman **Khadija**, and led her caravans to sell in **Palestine** and **Syria**. He became acquainted with Christians and Jews. So his belief in one supreme god deepened. Later he married **Khadija** a widow, who was 15 years elder to him. They had two sons and two daughters. Daughter **Fathima** survived and other three died. She was given in marriage to **Ali**. He led a normal married life up to the age of forty. He spent most of the time in meditation and fasting. Meanwhile he seriously thought about social and religious evils of Arabs. He used to spend several days and nights meditating in a solitary hilly cave at **Hira**. Gabriel a messenger of God preached holy Gospels to Paigambar when he was in

trance. These Gospels were later recorded by his disciples in **Quran**.

Mohammed realized the impact of Divine message of God. He also realised that, he was the chosen one, and had a great mission to fulfill. Soon he gathered a number of disciples. The earliest among them were his wife, his son-in-law, daughter, friend **Abu-Bakr** and his servant **Syed Mohammed**. He declared **“There is no God but Allah and Mohammed is his prophet”**.

He started teaching the principles of new faith to the people of Mecca. He criticized the meaningless ceremonials like Idol worship, polytheism, and superstitions among Arabs. He preached purity of life, truth and faith in Allah. He said Allah is Omnipotent and kind to all. He preached Allah would reward the just and punish the wicked. Those who surrender themselves to the will of God were Muslims. His followers called him Prophet. Mohammed declared he was the prophet chosen by Allah to reveal His message to mankind. **Allah, he said, “was all merciful, all wise and all powerful”**.

Hejira Era 622 C.E:- Mohammed strongly condemned idol worship and superstitious practices. People of his tribe were in charge of Kabah containing 363 idols and lived on the income derived from idol worship. So they turned against Mohammed, abused him and even tried to put him to death. Idol worshippers hated him. They said Mohammed was unnecessarily creating religious unrest among Arabs. They hatched a conspiracy against him. Disgusted and disappointed with the attitude of his people, Mohammed decided to leave his birth place Mecca with 200 followers in the year 622 C.E and took refuge in **Madina**. **“The secret journey of Prophet Mohammed from Mecca to Madina**

is known as Hejira". With this the Islamic Calendar began.

In Madina, Mohammed along with his disciples were welcomed by the people and thousands of them became his followers and accepted the ideas of Prophet Mohammed. In 630 C.E. Mohammed came back to Mecca. He condemned idol worship. A religious clash took place between Prophet Mohammed and people of Mecca in which Prophet Mohammad won. He brought religious and political unity among Arabs. Gradually internal conflict came to an end. Arabs accepted the principles of Prophet Mohammad.

Prophet Mohammad died in 632 C.E. After the death of Mohammed religious leadership was held by the Caliphs. It gave the Arabs spiritual and military unity.

Islamic Calendar: Hejira era was established during the Caliphate of **Umar**, in 622 C.E. Hejira year is a lunar year of 354 days, 12 months. The Hejira year is about 11 days shorter than Solar year. Each day begins at sunset and each month with the sighting of "**Crescent moon**". Therefore none of the Islamic religious festivals like **Ramzan, Id, Bakrid and Moharam** are celebrated without sighting of moon.

Quran means Recitation. Consolidated Gospels of Allah, which was received by Prophet Mohammed.

Teachings of Prophet Mohammed: The new faith which Mohammed preached was called 'Islam' which means "**Submission to God Allah**". There is a wide meaning to the term '**Islam**'. It preaches to be truthful, be faithful, and to have good conduct. Islam means peace. It preached equality not

slavery. The gist of Islam, the new religion is found in the sacred book '**Koran**' or '**Quran**.' Quran in Arabic, means recitation.

A true believer in Islam (Muslim) has to perform certain duties which might be called pillars of Islam or principles of Islam. They are Kalima, Namaz, Zaqqat, Roza, and Hajj.

1) Kalima:

It means faith. He should profess his faith in God Allah and his messenger, Mohammed- his Prophet. Every Muslim was required to recite Muslim Credo. "There is no God but Allah, everyone should surrender to him, have faith and respect him". This is an important message of Quran.

2) Namaz:

It means prayer. Every Muslim has to pray five times a day- at dawn, shortly after midday, late afternoon, at sunset and at bed time. He is expected to clean himself and turn towards Mecca and offer prayer. Every Friday one has to go to mosque to offer prayer and listen to the discussion on Quran. Prayer is the best method to please God and setting the sins pardoned.

3) Zaqqat: It is to give alms to the poor:

Alms giving is another duty of every Muslim. One should be honest and sincere. He has to give 2.5% of his income in charity for the promotion of religion, and help the poor. The Purpose of Zaqqat is to bring economic equality between the rich and poor. Giving alms leads to good understanding between rich and poor. If one dies without giving alms it remains as a social debt. Islam prohibits begging as a profession.

4) Roza: It means fasting:

Every Muslim should fast in the month of Ramzan. One should fast for 29 to 30 days from morning to dusk. Fasting brings in purity of heart. It balances the desires, it controls ones habits and it creates a confidence towards deliverance. It proves that we are not slaves of our habits. It is a proper training to acquire good character. The sick people, travellers, children, old and the nursing mothers are exempted.

Very pious people spend the last ten days praying in the mosque. According to tradition, Allah revealed the Quran during one of these nights of Ramzan. Fasting is ended by the celebration of Id-ul-fitr. On this day they put on new clothes, greet each other and give alms. **“Fasting brings us to the door of Allah’s palace and alms giving let us in”**

5) Hajj:-

It is a Holy pilgrim to Mecca. A true Muslim should undertake pilgrimage to the holy city of Mecca at least once in his life time. For such people heaven is opened. Hajj means renewal of submission to God Allah. As Kashi is to



Khaba Shrine

Hindus, Vatican city is to Christians so is Mecca to Muslims. Door to Mecca is open from October to December. Millions of Pilgrims come from all over the world. When prophet Mohammed prohibited the idol worship at Khaba it became holy prayer hall to Muslims.

Hajj pilgrim must repent for his Sins and take oath that he follows the teachings of Prophet Mohammed. The pilgrim must circumambulate the stone 7 times. Along with these five principles the Prophet advocated other moral codes such as.

- 1) The prophet says Nobody is a sinner in the world. I have shown good and bad to the universe. God Allah would reward a place in heaven, to those who are faithful to their family, society, friends, and Islam. God Allah would punish the sinners by sending them to hell.
- 2) Prophet prohibited the gambling, drinking, adultery and use of pork.
- 3) Islam combined in itself some of the best democratic principles such as equality and universal brotherhood.
- 4) Quran advocated other important moral values like respect for woman, parents, and kindness to slaves and animals.
- 5) Quran advocated Respect to teachers, and elders, protection of orphans. Polygamy, Divorce and Widow re-marriage are permitted.

Sects of Islam: Disputed succession, and civil strife divided the Muslims into two sects the **Sunnis** and the **Shias**.

1. **The Sunnis:** They maintain that **Abu-Bakr, Omar** and **Uthman** were legitimate successors of Prophet Mohammed.
2. **The Shias:** They believed that Ali the son in law of prophet Mohammed was the legitimate successor.

QUESTIONS

Answer in one word Or one sentence.

(Each carries 1Mark)

1. Who was the founder of Islam?
2. Which is the holy place of Muslims?
3. Who was the uncle of Prophet?
4. Who was the wife of Prophet?
5. On which hilly cave did Mohammed meditate?
6. Who was the messenger who preached the gospels to Prophet?
7. Which was the stone worshipped by Muslims at Mecca?
8. When did Prophet die?
9. Which is the holy book of Islam?
10. What is Kalima?
11. What is Namaz?
12. What is zaqqat?
13. What is Roza?
14. What is Hajj?

Answer in two words Or two sentences. (Each carries 2Marks)

1. Which is the symbol of Islam and name the religious centre of Muslims.
2. When and where was the prophet born?
3. Who were the parents of Mohammad?
4. Name the daughter and son-in-law of Mohammad.
5. What is the meaning of Islam?

6. Which are the two sects of Islam?

Answer in 15 to 20 sentences. (Each carries 5Marks)

1. Write about the life history of Mohammad.
2. Explain the teachings of prophet Mohammad.



Chapter-6

Medieval Age

Towards Change – Church, Society, State and Feudalism

Introduction: Medieval European history is marked from the fall of Western Roman Empire in 476 CE to the fall of Eastern Roman Empire and Constantinople in 1453 CE. This period has a span of 1000 years. During this period the accomplishments of the Greeks and Romans were neglected. Various German tribes invaded Western and Central Europe. The middle ages witnessed the rise of Byzantine Empire and Islamic and Western civilization.

Byzantine Empire: The Eastern half of the Roman Empire centered in Constantinople, survived as the Byzantine Empire for nearly 1000 years after the fall of Rome. Originally Constantinople was called as Byzantium, which was founded in 7TH century BCE by a Greek King called Byzas.

The middle age is divided into three phases:

(1) Early Middle Age

Which begins around 500 CE and ends around 1050 CE. It is called the 'Dark age' because of the confused and chaotic state of affairs that existed in Europe.

(2) High Middle Age

The period from 1050 CE to 1300 CE. This period witnessed advancement in terms of agriculture, improvement in the standard of living and Education, along with political stability. Towns and universities emerged. The authority of the pope increased.

(3) Later Middle Ages

The period from 1300 to 1453 CE. This period witnessed further development of towns and cities and decline in the power of feudalism and church. A new entrepreneurial and intellectual class emerged. They challenged the state and the church.

The important institutions of medieval ages like the church, Society and the state and Feudalism are discussed below.

Medieval Church:

Due to the fall of Roman Empire, there was political and social instability in Europe. The church filled the gap and emerged as a powerful authority. The church brought required stability and order. It patronized many scholars. It boosted the missionary activities. Many churches were established across Europe which strengthened the role of church over society, politics and economy.

Emergence of Papacy :

In the pre-middle ages ecclesiastical system was established. Every province was governed by a Bishop. All the Bishops in charge of various European provinces were equal in status. But in due course of time Bishop of Rome turned out to be most powerful. He was called the 'Pope'. St. Peter was the first Pope. By the time of Pope- Gregory the Great (590-604 CE), the pope became most powerful. He established 'Papacy' and defended Rome from the attack of Lombards. He had administrative and diplomatic skills and brought stability. At that time Latin became the divine language of Christianity.

Conflict between the Church and the King:

A conflict arose between pope Gregory VII and the Holy Roman emperor Henry IV. The king appointed the Bishop of Milan without the consent of the pope. The pope wanted to free the church from king's influence. He made alliance with many German princes who were against Henry IV. They together deposed the king. So he was forced to seek the pope's forgiveness. For this, the king was made to wait for three days on bare foot and in plain clothes in front of the citadel. The king obtained the pardon and power. Later in a melodramatic episode the king Henry IV chased pope Gregory VII out of Rome. In 14th century the supremacy of pope declined because of the following reasons.

- i. The contradictions within the Papal order and ecclesiastical arrangements.
- ii. The immoral successors.
- iii. The rise of National Monarchies



Henry IV



Pope Gregory VII



King Henry obtained the pardon of the Pope

Papal Schism: During 14TH century, a conflict between Philip IV, the king of France and Boniface VIII, the pope at Rome began. It was the result of Philip IV imposing taxes on the church. Boniface VIII opposed this and insisted that the king had to take Papal permission to tax the church. The conflict went to such an extent that Boniface was beaten to death. After this Clement V, a Frenchman became the pope. He did not go to Rome, instead moved the Papal court to Avignon. It continued in Avignon for 67 years. 7 popes of this period were all French and remained in Avignon. Gregory XI shifted the court back to Rome.

During the Papacy of Urban VI differences arose between him and cardinals, which gave rise to Papal Schism. The cardinals elected Clement VII as anti-pope and he shifted the papal court again to Avignon. Urban VI continued to be the Pope at Rome. This resulted in the division of Papacy into two groups. To resolve this the cardinals elected another anti-pope, Alexander V. The other two popes were asked to resign. They were excommunicated when they refused to do so. Thus the papal Schism ended by 1414 CE. It led to the decline of power and prestige of the pope.



Pope's Palace at Avignon



Church at Rome

Medieval Society: The urban commerce and trade based Mediterranean civilization shifted to North Atlantic region of Europe, which was agrarian. By this time the church had become powerful. It influenced the ruling classes as well as the common people. Church had great influence over the thoughts and behavioral patterns of the people on the western model.

The developments in medieval society had its impact on economy, education, literature and intellectual revival. They are discussed below.

Agriculture: In the Middle Ages agriculture was an important factor in the development of civilization. Agriculture was in primitive state because of political instability, frequent wars and invasions by barbaric German tribes. Later new lands were brought under cultivation. It was followed by an agricultural revolution. New techniques and tools like, heavy plough, crop rotation, use of water and wind mills, Iron agricultural equipments and horse to till fields, came into use. This helped in an enormous increase of agricultural production. It led to the increase of human population and number of domesticated animals. As a result human settlements grew into townships and later the increase in trade and commerce helped the growth of cities.

Manorial System: It was an important institution of the high middle ages. Under this system the serfs worked in agricultural estates centered around a 'Manor' owned by a lord. The serfs were not slaves. They too owned a piece of land. But they were under the control and jurisdiction of a lord. They worked in the Lord's fields as well as their own and paid taxes to the lord. The serfs commonly undertook activities like grazing, collection of fire wood, fishing and cultivation together. It was

like a closed community living. During the later high middle ages the condition of the serfs improved. They paid rent instead of giving duties or services to the lord.

Socio-Economic Changes: A class of nobility emerged during this period. They involved themselves in cultural and political activities. The church controlled the local skirmishes and battles. So the Nobles became free to develop the ideals of knighthood. This led to the development of etiquette. The attitude towards women also changed.

In the Manorial system, the serfs started to pay the rents. So the coins or currency replaced barter trade. Currency helped the revival of trade and commerce. It led to the advancement of networks of roads and river transport system. City-states like Pisa, Venice and Genoa became flourishing trade centers. Cities like Paris, London and Cologne doubled their population. There was increase in the demand for country side goods, which strengthened the economic life of the people. Sophisticated urban life was an important characteristic of this period. There developed a business class. This class established trade guilds to protect its own interests and made many rules for business transactions. There were two classes among the clergy-the higher class and lower class. The higher clergy led a luxurious life, while the lower clergy lived with limited requirements and humility. So there developed great disregard for the higher clergy.

Education: In the beginning, education was totally controlled by the church. The subjects taught included law, Latin, Grammar and Roman classics. Practical oriented schools were developed for the pupil of Nobles and rich merchants. They were free from the clutches of the church. The literacy

which was one percent of the population of Western Europe in 1050 CE, increased to forty percent by 1340 CE. Education in vernacular languages began, which challenged Latin as intellectual language.

Emergence of universities: The growth of universities was another important development of this period. Salerno, Bologna and Naples in Italy, Paris and Montpellier in France, Oxford and Cambridge in England and Salamanca in Spain were the important universities established during this period. The establishment of universities led to the development of 'Scholasticism'.



Oxford University



Cambridge University

Intellectual Revival: There was no intellectual life during the early middle ages because of political instability, sense of insecurity of life and scarce means to subsistence. During the higher Middle Ages foundation for intellectual life were laid with an increase in agricultural produce, betterment of administration and the development of towns and cities. The new system of tax collection, record keeping, law and administration necessitated education. The knowledge of Greek, Latin and Islam and the development of professional subjects

led to the intellectual revival. The major intellectuals of this period were Robert Grosseteste, Roger Bacon, Peter Abelard and St. Thomas Aquinas.

Literature: This period witnessed the growth in the fields of literature, art and Architecture. Literature in vernacular languages like French, German, Spanish and Italian became popular. The 'Romances' and 'Fabliaux' became the important contributions to the literary field. 'Divine Comedy' by Dante Alighieri and 'The Canterbury tales' by Geoffrey Chaucer (called as 'Father of English Literature') were the most important works of this period.

Fabliaux: A medieval verse tale characterized by comic, especially of a kind popular in 12th and 13th century France. Dante's Divine Comedy is a monumental narrative in effective rhyming Italian verse. It describes the poet's journey through hell, purgatory and paradise. This book criticizes the divine authority of pope.



Worms cathedral



Rheims cathedral

Architecture:

The medieval period had buildings and monuments of Romanesque and Gothic style. The main features of the Romanesque style were the rounded arch, small windows, massive walls of stone and the predominance of horizontal lines (Ex: Worms cathedral in eleventh century). Gothic architecture was one of the most attractive building styles. The main features of this style were pointed arch, ribbed vaulting and buttress. (Ex: Rheims cathedral and High Chapel of La Sainte Chapelle in Paris).

Medieval State:

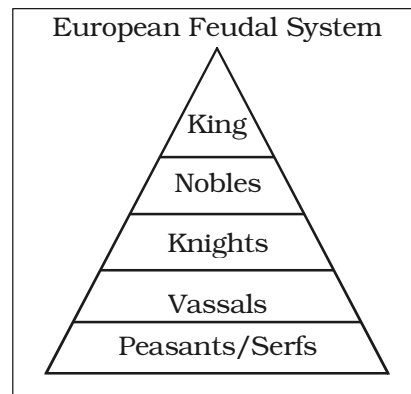
The fall of Roman Empire was followed by the invasions of Germanic tribes. This led to anarchy and instability which resulted in the rise of feudalism. In Medieval ages Feudalism was a wide spread political system with regional variations. However, in the pyramidal structure king was at the top. Peasants and serfs formed the lower base of this system. The church was also a dominating and competing partner of the state. It (Church) also owned lands, vassals and serfs, likewise administered and fought to protect them. Both the king and the pope claimed the 'Divine Right'. This marked the struggle for power and control over each other. Both church and monarchs sought the allegiance of common people in administering them. In this struggle some times the church had the upper hand and some times Kings had the upper hand. Ultimately kings had the upper hand in subjugating the Church.

Feudalism in Middle Age:

Feudalism developed in Western Europe. It was restricted to the periods between 5th and 12th centuries CE .The 5th century

marked the fall of Roman Empire and the 12TH century marked the emergence of national Monarchies. The period of 700 years between these two events required an alternative administration and political mechanism because there was the absence of centralized political authority. So a system of customary practices developed in Western Europe. It involved legal, military, administrative and socio-economic conditions of the people. Under this system the services and labor were exchanged for obligatory collective defence.

Feudalism in general stands for the decentralized system of governance and economy based on land. The word Feudalism is derived from the German word 'Feud' which means 'a piece of land'. So feudalism was based on the system of structural hierarchy linked to the ownership and cultivation of land. It was a pyramidal structure. On



the peak was the king. Under him were the Nobles and Knights followed by Vassals. The base of the pyramid was constituted by Serfs. The king distributed the lands among the Nobles and the knights, in turn, they distributed them among Vassals who got them cultivated by the serfs. Among the Serfs some were free and some were bounded peasants and laborers.

Vassalage: The king or the Greater lord granted land to someone. It was known as fief. And the person who received it was called as 'vassal' of that king. This was to be done in a ceremony. The vassal had to swear fidelity and loyalty of service to the lord.

The Vassal had to attend the king's court, provide counsel to the king on Judicial, political and administrative matters and provide military services. The Vassal was to give gift at the time of knighting of the king's eldest son and for the dowry of the king's eldest daughter. He was also supposed to raise funds for paying ransom to free the king from enemy. The vassal was the minor lord of the fief. The fief could be divided as 'sub fief' among the 'sub vassals'. The greater lord or the greater vassal had to protect the people of his land and performed legal, administrative and judicial duties.

The land was ultimately cultivated by the serf. By 10th century 'fiefdom' became hereditary but the terms of contract and succession differed, resulting in disputes between the vassals and the lord.

Causes for the growth of feudalism: Apart from the causes mentioned in the introduction, several other factors led to the growth of feudalism. The causes differed from region to region and period to period. They are summarized as under,

1. During the rule of weak kings the provincial officer obtained independent authority. The political rule became more decentralized to suit feudal rule.
2. To protect themselves from the 'Barbarian-invaders' of Germanic tribes the smaller land lords gave up their claims over their lands and surrendered them to the local lord. This gave a sense of security of life and property and helped in the development of feudalism.
3. The weakening of king's control over the Vassals also lessened his control over the people. The people were more bound to the lord, which strengthened feudalism.

4. The kings were very much dependent on the vassals to defend their kingdom, where as the Vassals required the king's legal sanction over their land. This mutual dependence strengthened feudalism.
5. It was impossible for kings to control vast land, because there were no adequate roads and means of transport. More over the financial burden of ruling vast empire made it impossible for a united rule.
6. The absence of a strong political system, insecurity of life and property made the feudal lords inevitable. They took the responsibility of protecting the property of the people from thieves, bandits, invaders, etc.
7. It was an agrarian society based on land. The king was absolute land owner and he could only give lands as grants or 'fiefs' to the lords in exchange of their services. The same system was followed in the bottom line. Feudalism was also inevitable due to the absence of industries and the serfs were bound to the land.

Merits of feudalism: Feudalism was time tested and need based system. It had following merits.

1. It helped the growth of decentralized political administration. The king was not only advised by vassals but at times he was forced to accept their terms and conditions. This checked the growth of absolute monarchy.
2. Feudalism helped to preserve monarchy and monarch sanctioned the fief to the Vassal, who in turn took an oath of loyalty and co-operation to fight for him.
3. In due course of time feudalism helped the growth of 'strong Monarchy' as the feudal lords became the courtiers of the monarchs.

4. No doubt the king and vassals had personal interests, yet they were united against invasions. This led to national defense and rise of nationalism.
5. The constant conflict helped the growth of military techniques in terms of better arms, training and organization. It encouraged the concept of chivalry. The nobles and knights became more mindful towards the poor and needy. Chivalry also developed respect towards women.
6. Feudalism brought stability and order in the society. The collective defense and maintenance of law and order within the feudal estate ensured protection and justice to the people.
7. Feudalism also developed a sense of duty and order. It was King's duty to protect the rights of the Vassals over their lands, where as the Vassal had the duty to protect his serfs. Even the serfs had their duties towards the Vassal.

Demerits of feudalism:

1. There were often skirmishes and wars between vassals or the vassals and kings. So there was no stability, peace and order. It had its own impact on society and economy too.
2. The Vassals always favored nominal monarchy and were against national government and national interest.
3. The Nobles were self interested. Their tyranny led to the suffering of commoners and serfs. Serfs were the victims of violence. Often war by nobles and war expenses led to the over taxing of common people.
4. The loyalty of the people was restricted to the feudal lords and not the nation or king, which was a hindrance to the growth of nationhood.

5. Feudalism increased the gap between the rich and the poor. The poor led the subsistent life where as the nobles led the life of leisure and idleness. The wealth, prestige, conducts and customs had a bearing on the life of peasants. It also encouraged the class system.
6. The church also participated in feudal system. It had vast lands and worked like feudal lords. There were also conflicts between the Bishops and kings and his vassals.

Causes for the decline of feudalism:

1. Rise of strong Monarchies: Strong monarchies grew in many countries of Europe. The king suppressed the feudal lords; this led to the decline of feudalism.
2. Shifting of loyalty: The common people and serfs were unhappy because they were heavily taxed and neglected. So they shifted their faith and loyalty towards their kings. This weakened the feudal lords. So the system collapsed.
3. Growth of commerce and Industry: With the growth of commerce and industry, people found new way of livelihood and left their lands. This also led to the rise of middle class. This gave a blow to the feudal system.
4. Dominance of money Economy: Payment in the form of services was replaced by 'money'. Commoner and serfs stopped giving military service to lords. This led to the decline in the power of feudal lords.
5. Building of strong armies by kings: The use of Gun powder and well organized armies resulted in the fall of Feudalism. The commoners and serfs were now protected by king's army instead of feudal lords.
6. Scarcity of laborers: There was scarcity of laborers due to two important factors- Firstly; the growth of industry

and commerce provided alternate employment. Secondly, the spread of epidemics like plague reduced the number of workers. This increased the demand and pays of workers and reduced the importance of feudal lords.

7. Struggle between the feudal lords: The feudal lords were troublesome to the serfs and commoners. These wars also reduced the number of feudal lords. The church also put many restrictions on feudal lords.



Questions

Answer in a word or one sentence. (Each carries 1 Mark)

1. Which was the “Divine language” of Medieval Christianity?
2. To which place was the papal court shifted from Rome?
3. Who wrote the book ‘Divine Comedy’?
4. What is fief?
5. Who was the first pope to make Avignon as his Centre?
6. Why Early Middle Ages is called ‘Dark Age’?
7. Which pope deposed King Henry IV?
8. Who were Vassals?
9. When did the papal schism end?
10. Who wrote the book ‘Canterbury tales’?

Answer in 2 words or 2 sentences. (Each carries 2 Marks)

1. Mention any two causes for the decline of pope’s authority in the 14th century?
2. Name any two trade centres of Medieval Europe.
3. Name any two universities that came into existence in Medieval Europe.
4. Name any two intellectuals of Medieval Europe.
5. Name any two literary styles of Medieval Europe.
6. Which are the styles of architecture found in the Medieval Europe?
7. From which word is ‘feudalism’ derived? What is its meaning?
8. Mention the pyrimidical structural hierarchy of feudalism.
9. Write two features of Romanic style.
10. Write two features of Gothic style.
11. Name the two factors that speeded up the agricultural production in Medieval Europe.

Answer in 15 - 20 sentences. (Each carries 5 Marks)

1. Write about Manorial system.
2. Mark the socio-economic changes in Medieval Europe.
3. Describe the conflict between the pope and the king in Medieval Europe.
4. Discuss the Merits and Demerits of feudalism.
5. What were the causes for the decline of feudalism?



CHAPTER 7

Beginning of Modern Age

Change from Medieval age to Modern age:

From the 14th to the end of 17th century, a distinct 'urban culture' developed in Europe. Urban people began to think of themselves as more 'civilized' than the rural people. Towns, particularly, Florence, Venice and Rome became the centres of art and learning. Artists and Writers were patronized by the rich and the aristocratic families. The invention of printing made books available to the people living in villages and towns. These helped the people of Europe to compare their world with that of ancient Greeks and Romans.

Religion came to be considered as something which each individual should choose for himself. Geo-centric belief of the Church was overturned by scientists who put forth the Helio-Centric theory. New geographical knowledge overturned the Euro-centric view that the Mediterranean Sea was the centre of the world.

Lot of Sources like documents, books, paintings, Sculptures, buildings, textiles of this period are preserved in museums in Europe and America.

The history of the modern world is intimately connected to a series of developments which began in Europe in the 14th century C.E. Among them are the Renaissance, Reformation and Geographical explorations. The dawn of Modern Age can be traced from 15th century C.E. It begins with the geographical discoveries. Many new lands, new people, their languages and culture came to light, which enriched their knowledge. It also led to the Renaissance and Reformation in Europe.

Renaissance led to the development of scientific attitude and humanism. It discouraged blind beliefs and superstitions. It criticized the Church which tried to keep the people in blind religious beliefs. Colleges and Universities were freed from the grip of the Pope. In the modern age revolutionary changes occurred due to scientific and technological inventions. These developments spread to all parts of the world through Europeans.

In the name of social, educational and humanitarian services, the European missionaries spread Christianity all over the world. Europeans established colonial Empire and enslaved the people of Asia, Africa, South America, and Australia. They systematically exploited the natural resources as well as human resources.

7.1 Geographical Explorations

The events Renaissance, Reformation and the Geographical explorations had a significant effect on the world. The contact between the Western and the Oriental countries was through land. It was a difficult task to cover long distances through forests, mountains, deserts, etc. The travellers took a long time to reach their destination.

In the later Middle ages, bold and enterprising men of Europe sailed in the unknown seas and discovered new sea routes and new continents, which came to be called as '**Geographical Explorations**'. These discoveries were one of the factors that transformed the Middle Age into the Modern Age.

Causes:

1. Capture of Constantinople by Turks:

The trade route between the East and the West (European countries) was carried out through Constantinople. The Ottoman Turks captured Constantinople in 1453. They were

not liberal minded as the earlier Arabs. They closed the trade route. They also looted the merchants and sometimes even committed atrocities. This forced the Europeans to find a new trade route to the East. The only possible such route was through the sea.

2. Demand for Commodities:

There was a great demand in Europe for Asian commodities like spices-pepper, ginger, clove, cardamom, etc. Muslin, silk, pearls, ivory and precious stones were also in demand. It was a lucrative trade. Europeans were eager to improve their standard of living by earning more. This was possible by enlarging commercial contacts with the Eastern countries. The discovery of new lands and sea routes earned them huge profits. Many adventurous sailors and traders too risked their lives to fulfill their ambitions.

3. Travellers Accounts:

The travellers accounts are one of the most important causes for the geographical discoveries. The Asian countries were rich, and the European travellers who visited them gave glowing accounts of the fabulous wealth. The European traveller Marco Polo, a jewellery merchant of Venice, along with Nicola Polo widely travelled in the east. They went to Mongolia, India and China. Marco Polo spent about 24 years in the east and gave a vivid account of geography, people, wealth and trade routes. All these excited the desire of European merchants to visit these countries.

4. Geographical knowledge:

This also led to the discovery of new sea routes and lands. In the 14th century travellers and sailors had the advantage of several books on travel, like '**A Merchant's Handbook**' by Francesco Balducci, '**Secrets of the Faithful Crusader**'

by Marino Sanudo. The myths like Earth was flat ,the seas were filled with terrible monsters , the tropical portion of Africa was blazing and surrounded by boiling water , etc. were proved false with the new knowledge on Geography.

5. Spread of Christianity:

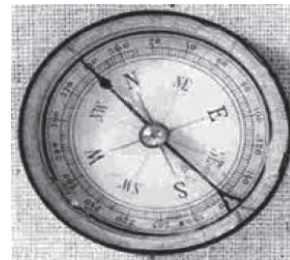
The Kings, Nobles and the Missionaries were very enthusiastic to spread Christianity in the new lands. Hence the Kings of Spain and Portugal encouraged explorations. The Missionaries took up the cause to spread Christianity.

6. Efforts of Prince Henry.

The training school of navigation started by Prince Henry of Portugal gave the necessary training to Sailors, Geographers, Map-makers, and Ship-builders.

7. Other Causes:

The invention of Printing press, Mariner's compass, new maps, and establishment of Banks and Joint Stock Companies also encouraged the navigators. Patronage by Kings also went far in the field of geographical discoveries.



Mariner's
compass

Important Explorations:



1. Prince Henry, the Navigator:

Prince Henry, the Navigator of Portugal, took great interest in shipping and navigation. Though he himself was not an explorer, he was the motivating force behind the great sailors. He opened the 'School of Navigation' to train sailors to venture out in search of new lands. He engaged the services of enterprising Italian Sailors, Geographers, Map-makers and

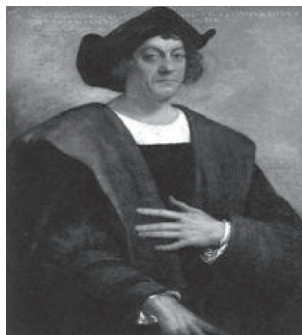
Ship-builders. During his lifetime Portuguese sailors explored the African coast. All such efforts made him to be called as 'Henry the Navigator'

2 Bartholomew Diaz:

The Portuguese explorer Bartholomew Diaz sailed along the western coast of Africa and reached the southern tip of the continent in 1488. He was forced to return back as he and his sailors were caught in a dangerous storm. So, he named the cape as '**the Cape of Storms**'.



3. Christopher Columbus:



He was a sailor from Genoa in Italy. He believed that, the earth was round in shape and thought of reaching India by crossing the Atlantic Ocean. He secured the help of King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella of Spain. They patronized Columbus with ships, men and money. Columbus and his men reached San Salvador, one of the Islands in Bahamas (West Indies) in 1492.

He believed that he had reached India, hence he called the natives as '**Red Indians**', as they were red in colour. Columbus made more voyages and discovered the land mass of South America, Cuba and Haiti. It may be noted here, that Columbus did not discover the main land of America.

4. Vasco da Gama:

He was a Portuguese sailor, who discovered the sea route to India. He was patronized by Emmanuel II, the Portuguese King. He sailed along the western coast of Africa and reached the Cape of storms, which was calm and pleasant. It gave a definite hope of discovering the sea route to the East. Hence he renamed it as '**The Cape of Good Hope**'. Then he sailed straight across the Indian Ocean and reached

Calicut in the Malabar Coast in 1498. He was welcomed by King Zamorin of Calicut. His voyage opened the gates for Europeans to enter India.

5. Amerigo Vespucci:

He was an Italian sailor, who discovered the main land of America. He wrote accounts of his voyages giving geographical details of the new world. Amerigo was the first explorer to note that the country explored by him and earlier by Columbus was a new continent. The new land was named as '**America**' after Amerigo Vespucci.



6. Ferdinand Magellan:

He was a Portuguese sailor, who created a new record in the history of navigation. He believed that the Earth was round and that it would be possible to circumnavigate the globe. In 1519, he got the support of Charles I, King of Spain and he set out on the great voyage, in five ships, the Victoria, the San Antonio, the Trinidad, the Concepcion, and the Santiago.



Magellan went around the southern tip of South America, sailing through the straits, entered a new Ocean .He found the ocean calm and quiet in contrast to the Atlantic. So he named it the '**Pacific Ocean**' (Peaceful). He crossed the Pacific and reached the Philippine Islands. On these islands Magellan lost his life in a fight with the natives in 1521. But one of his ships, the Victoria continued westward, headed by the captain Juan Sebastian Elcano and reached Spain after a voyage lasting nearly three years. The '**Victoria**' was the first ship to circumnavigate the world. It proved beyond doubt that the earth is round.



Victoria was the first ship to successfully circumnavigate the world. It was part of a Spanish expedition commanded by the Portuguese explorer Ferdinand Magellan, and after his demise during the voyage, by Juan Sebastian Elcano. Victoria was an 85 ton ship with a crew of 42. Its length was 60-70 ft.



Vasco-da-Gama (1469-1524): He was born in 1469, at Sines, near Lisbon, Capital of Portugal. He started his voyage from Lisbon on 8th July, 1497, with four ships and 150 sailors, through the Cape of Good Hope, he went towards East and reached Malindi Island. Here he met Indian Merchants, who put an Arab pilot Ahmad Ibn Majid, at his disposal. Then he sailed into Indian Ocean. After some days, the shores of India were seen. He landed at Calicut on May 20th, 1498. He was given the title '**Admiral of the Indian Ocean**'. He returned to Lisbon in 1499 with a cargo of Spices. He made a second voyage to India again in 1502. This time he interfered in the wars between the Kings of Cochin, Kannanur and Calicut. Then he went back to Lisbon. He made a third voyage to India, as the '**Viceroy of Goa**' in 1524. He died at Cochin, on 24th December, 1524.

Other Explorers and their discoveries

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Jaun Cabot (Italy) | – | New Found land (1497) |
| 2. Balboa (Spain) | – | Pacific Ocean, Cape of Panama (1499) |
| 3. Hernando Cortez (Spain) | – | Mexico (1519) |
| 4. Cabral (Portugal) | – | Brazil (1520) |
| 5. Francesco Pizaro (Spain) | – | Peru (1532) |
| 6. Jacques Cartier (France) | – | St. Lawrence River (1534) |
| 7. Hudson (England) | – | Canada (1610) |
| 8. Tasman (Denmark) | – | Tasmania (1611) |
| 9. James Bruce (England) | – | Blue Nile (North Africa-1770) |
| 10. James Cook (England) | – | Australia (1772) |
| 11. Mungo Park (England) | – | Sahara (North Africa-1795) |
| 12. McKenzie (England) | – | Rocky Mountains (North America-1820) |
| 13. Amundson (Denmark) | – | South pole (1912) |
| 14. Robert Peary (Norway) | – | North Pole (1928). |

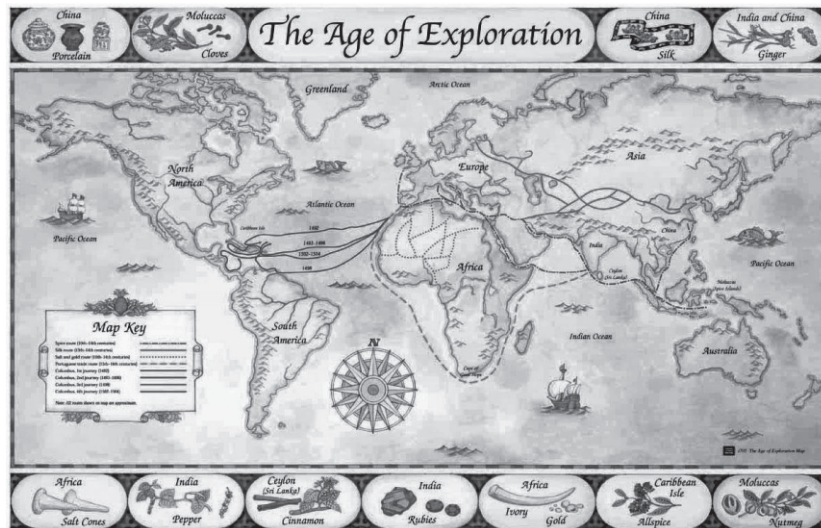
Results:

The geographical discoveries had a great impact on the political, economic, social, religious and cultural history of the world.

- 1) The Discovery of new lands like North America and South America provided a lot of opportunities. The world, since the explorations was considered as the enlarged world.
- 2) The circumnavigation of the Earth by Magellan proved that, the Earth is round.
- 3) The explorations increased the European contact with the East. Now, a large number of Europeans came to the East for trade, to spread Christianity, to establish colonies, etc. This had an impact on both the East and the West.
- 4) Venice, Genoa, Florence, etc. were important trading centres of Europe. But now, they lost importance because of the emergence of new cities like London, Lisbon, Amsterdam,

etc. This was mainly due to the discovery of new trade routes.

- 5) The Kings sent missionaries into the explored territories to spread Christianity. Hence Christianity entered into Asia, Africa and America. The Geographical discoveries gave a large scope for the spread of Christian religion by converting the natives.
- 6) The explorations brought the support of the rich merchants and the middle classes to Monarchy. This support enabled stable Monarchies at England, Spain, France, etc.
- 7) The Geographical discoveries ensured competition among the European Nations. The competition was mainly to have trade contacts with the newly discovered lands and subsequently have trade Monopoly. They became aggressive and ruthless to realize these goals.
- 8) Discovery of new lands encouraged Slave trading, Ship building, Banking and commerce. It also helped Renaissance and Reformation.



7.2 Renaissance

The 15th to 16th centuries witnessed Renaissance in European history. The term Renaissance is derived from the Latin word '**Renasaree**', which means '**Rebirth**' or '**Revival**'. It indicates a revival of the study of the classical culture of ancient Greece and Rome. The Renaissance influenced two other contemporary events, viz, the Geographical discoveries and the Reformation. It brought about a transition from the medieval to the modern times.

The capture of Constantinople by the Ottoman Turks resulted in the scholars flee to Italy. The Italian scholars welcomed the new ideas and knowledge. These ideas and knowledge further percolated into other European nations. Hence Italy is called, as '**the school of Renaissance**' or '**Mother land of Renaissance**'.

Causes:

1. Capture of Constantinople -1453:

The capture of Constantinople by the Turks forced the scholars to flee to Italy. The Pope, Bishops, Princes, and Merchants sheltered the scholars. The encouraging conditions in Italy helped the study of classical literature, hence commencing the Renaissance in Europe.

2. Spread of Education:

The Education by Catholic Mission schools and universities at different places in Europe like Paris, Padua, Naples, Oxford, Bologna, etc. imparted new thinking and learning. The spread of Education in the 14th century changed the outlook of the people.

3. **Geographical Discoveries:**

The Discovery of new lands in 15th and 16th centuries by the Europeans brought them into contact with new ideas, thoughts and knowledge. This encouraged the thinkers to give importance to Reason, Observation and Experimentation. This expanded the intellectual Horizon.

4. **Fall of Feudalism:**

By the end of the medieval age feudalism collapsed, giving rise to centralized Monarchies. The Kings were interested in the welfare of the people and were interested in patronizing classical literature. Hence they gave patronage to Education.

5. **Encouragement to Art and Learning:**

The interest generated among the European people towards Classical Art, Architecture and Learning was greatly patronized by the Kings and the Clergy. The rich merchant class and bankers also played an important role in encouraging the cause.

6. **Role of the Printing Press:**

The invention of printing press was the chief factor in spreading new ideas and thoughts to the people. The Books were printed in a large number which reached the nooks and corners of Europe. For e.g. the Book '**Praise and Folly**' of Erasmus had 24000 copies printed in one year. This shows how printing press had revolutionized the spread of thought.

Features:

1. **Humanism:**

An intellectual group in Italy started humanist movement. They developed humanism, a sympathetic study of man.

Later on, humanism spread across Europe.



PETRARCH

This approach was rational and humanistic. Humanism developed a broad and open mind and a critical approach. The Humanists were primarily interested in classical literature. This movement was started under the leadership of the great humanist, **Petrarch**. He is known as '**The Father of Humanism**' and also considered as '**The Father of Renaissance**'. Some other important humanists were Dante, Cicero, Boccaccio, and Cervantes.

2. Classicism:

The other important feature during the Renaissance in Europe was Classicism. Renaissance revived the interest among the people, a spirit about the ancient Greek and Roman Classics. This in turn, generated an expression of classicism in Art, Architecture and Literature. Totally it developed a classical culture in Europe.

3. Vernacular languages:

Renaissance in Europe resulted in the development of vernacular languages like English, German, Italian and Spanish. The classical literature in Latin and Greek were translated or written in the vernacular languages. These efforts popularized the classical literature and also developed the vernacular languages.

Contributions:

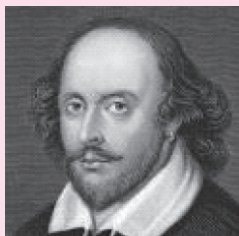
Literature:

Renaissance was greatly expressed in the Literature of the period. Humanism and Classicism were the most important themes of the Literature. The Italian writers contributed to a great extent, supported by other writers in English, Spanish, Dutch, French, etc. Petrarch, Dante and Boccaccio were the earliest writers of Renaissance. They are popularly called as '**the Morning stars**' of the Renaissance. Petrarch collected about

200 Latin and Greek manuscripts. The following writers and the works are some of the important Renaissance writings.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Dante (Italy) | - Divine Comedy, the Monarchy. |
| 2. Petrarch (Italy) | - Laura, Africa. |
| 3. Machiavelli (Italy) | - The Prince, The history of Florence. |
| 4. Boccaccio (Italy) | - The Tales of Decameron, Life of Dante. |
| 5. Sir Thomas More (England) | - Utopia |
| 6. Edmund Spenser (England) | - Fairy Queen |
| 7. John Milton (England) | - Paradise Lost, Paradise Regained. |
| 8. William Shakespeare (England) | - Julius Caesar, Hamlet, Romeo and Juliet, Othello, Macbeth, King Lear, The Comedy of Errors, As You Like It, The Tempest, The Twelfth Night, The Winter's Tale. |
| 9. Miguel Cervantes (Spain) | - Don Quixote |
| 10. Desiderius Erasmus (Holland) | - Praise and Folly, Familiar Colloquies. |
| 11. Leonardo Bruni (France) | - Translated the books of Plato, Aristotle and Socrates to Italian language. |

William Shakespeare's Plays



Comedy Plays —All's Well That Ends Well , As You Like It , The Comedy of Errors, Love's Labour's Lost , Measure for Measure, The Merchant of Venice, The Merry Wives of Windsor , A Midsummer Night's Dream, Pericles, Prince of Tyre, The Tempest, The Twelfth Night, The Two Gentlemen of Verona,. The Winter's Tale.

Tragedy Plays-Romeo and Juliet, Julius Caesar, Hamlet, Othello, King Lear, Macbeth, Antony and Cleopatra, The Diary of young girl, Antigone , Death of Sales man, ,The Book of Thief.

Art and Architecture:

The Renaissance art and architecture was humanistic and realistic. It had a new and independent outlook. It also came out of the clutches of the Church and became secular. Art in particular, came closer to human life. The '**Gothic Architecture**' developed during the Renaissance. It was a mixture of Greek, Roman, Doric, Ionic and Corinthian styles of architecture. It consisted of large arches and domes, tall pillars and beautiful decorations. The structures were generally built in stone. Large palaces, Churches, monasteries and public buildings were built. The important architects of the period were Alberti, Monetti, Brumeleschi, Brumante and Michael Angelo.

The important architectural and sculptural examples of the Renaissance period are as follows.

- 1) Rome-The Medici and the Farnese palaces
- 2) London - The Palace of Pope Julius III
- 3) Florence- The Pitty Palace
- 4) London - The Banquet house in white hall
- 5) London- St. Paul's Cathedral

- 6) Rome -St. Peter's Cathedral
- 7) Venice- St. Mark's Cathedral
- 8) Spain- Piccolomini Palace
- 9) Venice- Doyage Palace
- 10) Vatican-Sistine Chapel.



St. Peter's Church

is an excellent example of Renaissance architecture. It is in the city of Rome. The ground plan has the shape of a Latin cross. It has a colossal and magnificent dome, well planned and executed by Michael Angelo. Interior space is fully

utilized for ornamentation by coloured marble and stucco reliefs. Its length is 600ft and the breadth is 450 ft. The big dome with a diameter of 137 ft stands at a height of 450 ft from the ground.

Sculpture:

During the Renaissance, Sculpture was more encouraged. The famous sculptors of the Renaissance were Lorenzo Ghilberti, Donatello, Michael Angelo and Albrecht Durer.

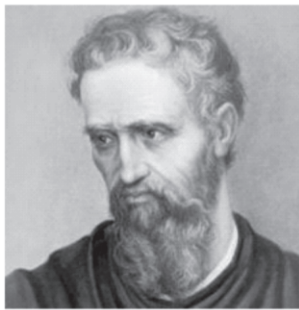
The following works are the contributions of the sculptors.

- 1) **Lorenzo Ghilberti** –the carvings of the doors of the Baptistery at Florence,
- 2) **Donatello**- ‘Statue of St. George’ in Florence, **Statue of St. Mark** in Venice.

- 3) **Michael Angelo**- the statues of -‘**The David**’ ‘**The Moses**’, ‘**The Pieta**’ and ‘**The Bounded slave**’. He designed the Dome of the Church of St. Peter at Rome.
- 4) **Albrecht Durer**-‘**The Knight and Death**’, ‘**St. Jerome in his study**’.

Painting:

The greatest glory of the Renaissance was painting. The paintings were made on canvas, glass, wood or other materials.



Michel Angelo



The Bounded slaved



The David



The Moses



The Pieta

The technique of oil painting was mastered. Titian was popular for using bright colours. The Popes, Kings and merchants gave generous patronage to Painting. The Florentine school to which Leonardo Da Vinci, Michel Angelo and Raphael belonged

became a great centre of painting. They were able to develop their genius fully without being restricted or controlled by the rigid rules of the Church. They made a humanistic and secular approach, and produced highly artistic and life-like paintings.

The important painters and their works were as follows.

- 1) Leonardo Da Vinci- 'The Last Supper', 'The Mona Lisa' , 'Virgin of the Rocks' 'The Virgin and Child' , 'Head of a Woman' , 'Madonna Litta', etc
- 2) Michael Angelo— 'The Last Judgement', 'The Creation of Adam', 'Day and Night', 'Dawn and Sunset', etc
- 3) Sanzio Raphael —'Sistine Madonna'
- 4) Titian— 'The Assumption of the Virgin'.



The Last Supper



Virgin of the Rocks



The Virgin and Child

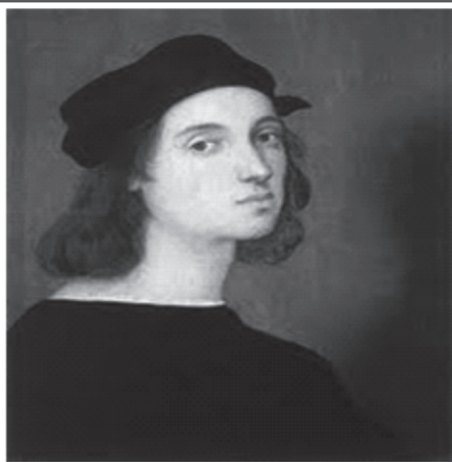
Michael Angelo's - Paintings



The Creation of Adam



The Last Judgment



Sanzio Raphael



Sistine Madonna

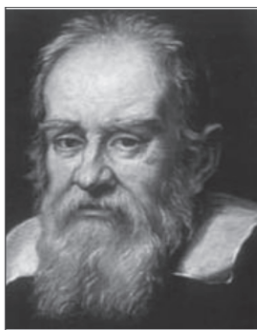
Science:

Renaissance encouraged the development of science. Especially in science observation and experimentations were included. Several great scientists contributed much to the progress of Science in several fields-Physics, Mathematics, Astronomy, Geography and Chemistry.

In 1500, **Jackot Nufer** (Swiss) carried out the first Successful '**caesarean operation**' on a woman. **Roger Bacon** succeeded in discovering many uses of gun powder and the magnifying lens. **Leonardo Da Vinci** (Italy) invented the '**Parachute**' in 1480. He produced the diagram of a '**flying machine**', which inspired the invention of an aero plane. **Nicholas Copernicus** (Poland) made progress in the study of astronomy. He propounded the '**Helio-centric theory**' as opposed to the Ptolemaic '**Geo-centric theory**'. He affirmed the principle that "the earth is round, and it moves round the Sun, which is the centre of the planetary system".

John Kepler (Germany) improved the theory of Copernicus. He proved that "the planets including the earth revolve round

the sun in elliptical orbits and not in a circle as indicated by Copernicus". **Hans Lipperhey** (Germany) invented the '**Telescope**' in 1608. **Galileo** (Italy), roughly studied the solar system and he explained the Copernicus theory. He improved the **telescope**. He observed mountains on the moon and rings around the Saturn through the telescope. He declared that the world is controlled by natural laws. He discovered '**Thermometer**', '**Barometer**' and '**Pendulum**'. **Sir Isaac Newton** (England) proposed the '**Laws of Gravitation**' governing the motions of the planets around the sun and the moon round the earth. **William Harvey** (England) elucidated the '**Blood Circulation**'. He said how blood circulates from the heart through arteries to the various parts of the body, and comes back to the heart through veins. **John Guttenberg** (Germany) set up the first '**Printing Press**' on a large scale in Germany in 1440.



Galileo



Nicholas Copernicus



Sir Isaac Newton

**Leonardo Da Vinci (1452-1519);**

Leonardo Da Vinci of Florence had an amazing range of interests from Botany and Anatomy to Mathematics and Art. He painted the 'Mon Lisa' and the 'Last supper'. One of his dreams was to fly. He spent many years observing birds in flight, and designed a flying machine. He signed his name as '**Leonardo da Vinci, disciple of experiment**' **Leonardo Da Vinci's Paintings;** *Mona Lisa, The Last Supper, Virgin of the Rocks, The Battle of Anghiari, Lady with an Ermine, The Virgin and Child, Madonna Litta , Adoration of the Magi, Head of a*

Woman, St. John the Baptist, The Benois Madonna, Salvator Mundi. are some of his important paintings.



Mona Lisa- It was one of the most important paintings of Leonardo da Vinci. Mona Lisa is listed among the greatest pictures of the world. Leonardo took about four years (1500-1504) to complete it. Leonardo undertook to paint, for Francesco del Giocondo. Lisa del Giocondo, was a member of the Gherardini family of Florence and Tuscany and the wife of wealthy Florentine silk merchant Francesco del Giocondo. '**Mona**' means '**Ma'am, Madam, or my lady**' in English. '**Lisa**' is her name. The painting is thought to have been commissioned for their new home and to

celebrate the birth of their second son, Andrea. Now it is preserved in the Louvre museum at Paris

Results:

- 1) The Renaissance marked the dawn of the Modern Age and the end of the medieval period.
- 2) The Renaissance freed Europe from intellectual Bondage. The Church lost its strangle hold over the Kings and people.
- 3) The Renaissance created the spirit of humanism. The existence of man was given importance over the metaphysical world.
- 4) The importance of Latin was reduced and national literatures in vernaculars developed.
- 5) The Renaissance gave a tremendous push to art and architecture. It freed art from the strangle hold of the Church, and made it secular and humanistic.
- 6) The Renaissance enhanced the importance of the ancient Greek and Roman classics. The ancient classics were now read with an open mind in several schools, colleges and universities.
- 7) As the Renaissance encouraged scientific inventions, experiments and discoveries could be made.
- 8) Monarchy was strengthened due to the dawn of Renaissance. It led to the rise of the spirit of National consciousness in several countries.



7.3 - REFORMATION

Reformation was a religious movement, which broke out in the later Middle Ages and came to a climax in the 16th century. The movement or upheaval was directed against the various draw backs of the Church and objectionable practices of the Clergy men. The main target of this movement was the Pope, the highest authority in the Church hierarchy.

This movement began in Germany, and then spread to all European countries –England, France, Switzerland, and Scotland. The traditional authority of the Pope and the Roman Catholic Church were challenged by a group of rebels in different parts of Europe. That led to the rise of Protestant Churches in many countries. This came to be known as Reformation. This movement was led by Martin Luther. Reformation was one of the patterns that brought about a transition from medieval to modern age.

Causes:

1) Religious causes:

The Catholic Church practiced many evils like simony (selling of Church offices to the highest bidder), one person holding more than one post, etc. The Clergy also lived secret and immoral lives. The Pope and the Clergy led luxurious lives. The principles like simplicity and forgiveness of Jesus were completely forgotten by the Church. The anger against such evils was one of the chief causes for the Reformation.

2) Influence of Renaissance:

The Renaissance indirectly influenced Reformation. It was steadily raising a critical spirit, individualism and freedom in thought and expression. There was a marked widening

of mental horizons and a strong feeling of self-confidence and self-reliance. The humanists denounced the corruption in the Church. Through their writings they ridiculed the Clergy. They also exposed shamelessness of the Church. In the 14th century John Wycliffe '**The morning star of Reformation**' in England was declared a heretic and condemned to death for expressing protest against the abuses of the Church.

3) Political causes:

The 16th century Europe witnessed the rise of nationalism. The royal despotism was on the rise. The Church interfered in the internal affairs of the state. The Pope had been exercising the right to tax all Christians of Europe. He had also been appointing officers to Churches of Europe and acting as judicial authority. This was disliked by Kings and people, who felt that the Church should take interest only in the religious, spiritual and moral domains. They tried to curb the powers of the Pope.

4) Economic Causes:

The Roman Church was very rich. It had lots of land, money and other luxurious articles and buildings. They also oppressed the people by collecting taxes and fines. The Pope and Clergy lived lavish and luxurious lives. They collected taxes like tithe, peter pence, etc. The Church also imposed various other fines and fees. For Example, the Popes ordered their deputies to collect money whenever they wanted to build or repair a Cathedral. The Kings and the people were burdened by the Church for its expenditure.

5) Immediate Cause: Sale of Indulgences:

Indulgences were letters of forgiveness issued in the name of the Pope. The people who committed sins and crimes secured the indulgences by paying money. These funds were used for constructing buildings, Churches and Cathedrals.

Money collected by the sale was not properly accounted. The Clergy began to propagate that the indulgences were tickets to heaven. The sinners and criminals who purchased the indulgences were also exempted from punishments. This caused great resentment among the people



John Wycliffe (1324-1384) was an early leader of the Reformation. He was an English priest and professor of Theology at Oxford. He openly criticized the Church. He supported the State and said it was higher than the Church. He wrote pamphlets against the tributes demanded by the Pope. He declared that the Pope was unworthy to become the representative of God on earth. He condemned the abuses, accumulation of wealth and luxury of the Church.

Among the great leaders, who challenged the Church, Wycliffe was the earliest. So he was called the '**Morning Star of Reformation**'.

Course of Reformation:

Martin Luther (1483-1546) - Lutheranism (Protestant Movement)

Martin Luther was the leader of the Reformation Movement. He was born in a poor peasant family at Eiselben (Germany) in 1483. He had his primary education at Mansfield and Magdeburg schools. He secured the Master's degree in Theology at Erfurt University. Martin, a sensitive youth entered the religious life as an Augustinian friar and became a monk. He was greatly influenced by the philosophy of St. Augustine. He became a professor of Theology in the University of Wittenberg. In 1511 he got an opportunity to visit Rome. He was shocked at the worldliness of the Pope and the corrupt and immoral life led by the Clergy. He was disappointed by the evil practices.



Pope Leo X was interested in raising money to rebuild the great Basilica of St. Peter's at Rome. He issued Indulgences and the money collected would be devoted to the cause. These Indulgences became unpopular and resented by the people. In 1517, John Tetzel, the agent of the Pope was sent to Germany to sell the Indulgences. He sold them carelessly to whoever offered money. The sales of Indulgences were resented by Martin Luther. He wrote the book '**The Manifesto of Reformation**'. Luther wrote his objections in the form of '**95 Theses**' and posted them on the Church door at Wittenberg. This promoted a debate on the subject. This was a challenge to the Pope and his supporters. Luther also started attacking the doctrines of the Catholic Church. He tried to build his own Churches. Pope Leo X excommunicated Luther. He was expelled from the Church and branded a heretic. Luther retaliated by burning the Papal bull in public at Wittenberg. The Pope referred the matter to Charles V, the Holy Roman Emperor and asked him to take action against Luther. Charles V asked Luther to withdraw the allegations made against the Church, but the latter refused.

Luther's life was under threat. So he stayed in isolation for one year. During this time he translated the Bible into German language. The translated Bible became very popular. The Lutheran teachings spread like wildfire throughout Germany. German princes, Peasants, Clergymen and others rose against the Church and seized its property and abolished traditional forms of worship.

Martin Luther established a new Church for his followers.

This Church was known as '**Lutheran National Church**'. They rejected the leadership of the Pope. Practice of celibacy of the Clergy was removed. He himself married an ex-nun to oppose celibacy. Indulgences and worship of saints were rejected. Bible was regarded as the sole source of religion.

The rise of Lutheranism caused conflict between Catholics and Protestants. Both the groups formed leagues and jumped into religious wars. The struggle ended with the '**Peace of Augsburg in 1555**'. According to this peace treaty Lutheranism was recognized in Germany. The rulers were given the freedom to follow the faith which they chose.

Lutheranism spread into many countries of Europe. The Kings of Sweden, Denmark and Norway were against Roman Catholicism. They took several steps to establish and strengthen Protestantism. Roman Catholic Churches were replaced by Lutheran National Churches. The property of Roman Catholic Churches and Monasteries were confiscated.

Similar to Lutheranism, Calvinism and Anglicanism rose against Roman Catholic Church and became independent.



Huldreich Zwingli (1484-1531): The leader of the Protestant movement in Switzerland was Zwingli. He was deeply influenced by Luther. He was a original thinker, who felt it was his duty to expose the drawbacks of the Catholic Church. He had a large number of followers in Switzerland. He read the Bible in the Original Greek and Hebrew. He believed that the Church should be completely independent of the State. He worked to spread the ideas of the Reformation on Swiss soil. He was killed in a battle against Catholic troop's in 1531.



John Calvin (1509-1564) and Calvinism:

In France, Calvin was strongly influenced by Martin Luther and Erasmus. He was a lawyer by profession, but he had to leave his country and settle down at Geneva in Switzerland. He gave a clear exposition of the main religious beliefs of the Protestants in his book '**The Institutes of Christian Religion**'. He criticized the Roman Catholic Church. His theory was called as '**Calvinism**'. This spread from Switzerland to other European Countries like France, Germany, the Netherlands, Hungary, Poland, England and Scotland. He encouraged learning, in both the arts and sciences.



Henry VIII (1491-1547) and Anglicanism:

In England, Anglicanism was introduced under the leadership of King Henry VIII, who was not a religious reformer like Luther. In the beginning he was in favour of Roman Catholicism. When Luther challenged Papal authority, suddenly he turned anti-Papal. Henry took ruthless steps against the Catholic Church. He also liquidated the monasteries and seized their vast wealth, landed property and cash. Henry VIII established an '**Anglican Church**' in England and he became the head of both the Church and the State.

Counter Reformation:

The religious upheaval in the 16th century gave rise to Lutheranism, Calvinism, Anglicanism and the radical sects. The rapid spread of Protestantism alarmed the Catholics and they felt the urgency to check further damage to the Catholic Church. They demanded Reformation from within, and the movement came to be known as '**Counter Reformation**'.

The attitude of the Popes changed. They took firm steps to check the spread of Protestantism. The Roman Catholic Church made efforts to win back the Protestant dominated countries to the Roman obedience.

A concerted Counter-Reformation Movement was launched with the four-fold purpose of punishing, reforming, converting, and rendering social service. The Inquisition was to punish, the Council of Trent was to introduce reforms and the Society of Jesus was to render service to God and Society.

Inquisition:

The Inquisition was a Roman Catholic court formed for conducting inquiry into cases of heresy and meting out punishments to those who were found guilty. The guilty were excommunicated and given over to the civil arm for punishment, which included torturing and execution by burning. They issued a strict code of conduct to be followed by the Church officials. The Inquisition was first established in Spain.

The Council of Trent: (1545-1563).

The Council of Trent took steps to remove all abuses, which had earlier crept into the Church. Sale of Indulgences was prohibited. Strict disciplinary rules were laid down for Bishops and other religious officers. The service book of the Church was revised. An 'Index' of dangerous and heretical books was prepared, and the Catholics were prohibited from reading those books.



Society of Jesus:

The Counter-Reformation movement was strengthened by the Society of Jesus. It was established by **Ignatius Loyola** (1491-1556) in 1534. Ignatius Loyola was able to inspire a large team of selfless, educated and disciplined priests to serve God and Christianity. The



members of the society were popularly known as '**Jesuits**'. He wrote '**The Spiritual Exercises**', which became a great source of inspiration to the Roman Catholics. Their main aim was to restore the lost glory and authority of the Catholic Church. The Jesuits took the vows of simplicity, chastity, obedience, service and spread Catholicism. Society of Jesus established many schools and colleges in Europe, India, China, Brazil and other countries. The progress of Protestantism was checked by their missionary zeal, and thousands of Protestants were persuaded to return to the Roman Catholic fold. The Jesuits were able to spread Christianity in almost every country in the world.

Results:

- 1) The Reformation freed the individual from blind faith and provided him intellectual freedom.
- 2) The Movement revitalized the Christian world whether, Catholic or Protestant. It cleared the doubts about the Christian doctrines. The teachings of Jesus and Bible once again received importance.
- 3) The Christian religion was divided into two main sects. They were-The Catholics and The Protestants. With the passage of time many more sub sects came into existence among Catholics and Protestants.

- 4) Reformation weakened the power of the Pope and the Church, which strengthened Nationalism and Monarchs.
- 5) The members of the Society of Jesus spread Catholic religion all over the world through Missionaries and Education.
- 6) Reformation greatly encouraged Literature. The vernacular languages received great encouragement. The translation of the Bible into Vernacular languages was a land mark in History.
- 7) Civil wars broke out between Catholic and Protestant countries. These wars resulted in much bloodshed, death and destruction. The position of the Pope declined.
- 8) The confiscated wealth of the Church was utilized for the economic development. The money lenders, bankers and financiers secured a high status in the society.

Questions

I. Answer the following in 1 word or 1 sentence. (Each carries 1Mark)

1. Who was called as the 'Navigator'?
2. Who explored the main land of 'South America'?
3. What is the meaning of the word 'Renaissance'?
4. From which word is the term 'Renaissance' derived?
5. Which country was called as the 'Mother land of Renaissance'?
6. Who invented the printing press?

7. Who was known as the 'Father of Renaissance'?
8. Who was called the 'Father of Humanism'?
9. Who is the author of 'Divine Comedy'?
10. Name the author of 'Utopia'.
11. Who wrote the book 'Paradise Lost'?
12. Who painted the 'Mona Lisa'?
13. Who propounded the 'Law of Gravitation'?
14. Who was the leader of the Reformation?
15. Who Published the '95 Theses' against the Catholic Church?
16. Who is called the 'Morning Star of Reformation'?
17. What is 'Counter Reformation'?
18. What is 'Inquisition'?
19. Who founded the 'Society of Jesus'?
20. Who was the Pope during the Reformation movement?
21. What were 'Indulgences'?
22. What were the followers of Ignatius Loyola called as?

II. Answer the following in 2 words or 2 sentences. (Each carries 2 Marks)

1. Who occupied the city of Constantinople and when?
2. Why was Prince Henry called as the 'Navigator'?
3. Who discovered sea route to India and when?
4. Name any two ships of Magellan.
5. Which was the first ship to circumnavigate the world and who led this?
6. Name any two Geographical Explorers.
7. Name any two Humanists of the Renaissance.
8. Mention any two works of William Shakespeare.
9. Name any two painters of Renaissance.
10. Name any two paintings of Leonard da Vinci.
11. Name any two paintings of Michael Angelo.
12. Name any two Scientists of the Renaissance.
13. Where and in which year was Martin Luther born?
14. Who was John Wycliffe and to which country did he belong?
15. Name the two sects of Christianity.
16. Who led the Counter Reformation? Name the organisation he founded.

III Answer the following in 15 to 20 sentences. (Each carries 5 Marks)

1. What was the role of Columbus and Vasco da Gama in Geographical explorations?
2. What were the causes for Renaissance?
3. What were the contributions of Renaissance to literature?
4. What were the Contributions of Renaissance to Art and Architecture?
5. Give an account to the Scientific Progress during the Renaissance.
6. Describe the results of the Renaissance.
7. Write about Counter Reformation.

IV. Answer the following in 30 to 40 sentences. (Each carries 10Marks)

1. Describe the causes and results of Geographical explorations.
2. Describe the Cultural Contributions of Renaissance.
3. Explain the Causes and results of Reformation.
4. Describe the role of Martin Luther in the Reformation Movement.



other inventions. They were also cost effective. Sodium carbonate had many uses in the glass, textile, soap, and paper industries. Early uses for sulphuric acid included pickling (removing rust) iron and steel, and for bleaching cloth. After 1860 the focus of chemical innovation was in dyestuffs, and Germany took world leadership, building a strong chemical industry.

Machine tools:

The Industrial Revolution could not have developed without machine tools, for, they enabled manufacturing machines. They have their origins in the tools developed in the 18th century by makers of clocks, watches and scientific instruments on a large scale. Machines were built by various craftsmen—carpenters made wooden framings, and smiths and turners made metal part.

Gas lighting :

Another major industry of the later Industrial Revolution was gas lighting. Though others made a similar innovation elsewhere, the large scale introduction of this was the work of William. The process consisted of the large scale gasification of coal in furnaces. Gas lighting was first introduced in London. Gas lighting had an impact on social and industrial organization. It allowed factories and stores to remain open longer than with tallow candles or oil. Its introduction allowed night life to flourish in cities and towns as interiors and streets could be lighted on a larger scale than before.

Glass making:

A new method of producing glass, known as the cylinder process, was developed in Europe during the early 19th century

.This process was used by the Chance Brothers to create sheet glass. They became the leading producers of window and plate glass. This advancement allowed for larger panes of glass to be created without interruption, thus freeing up the space planning in interiors as well as the fenestration of buildings. The Crystal Palace is the supreme example of the use of sheet glass in a new and innovative structure.

Effects of Industrial Revolution:

Agriculture:

Revolution in Agriculture began centuries before Industrial Revolution. But the invention of machinery played a big part in driving forward the Agricultural Revolution. It played a part in freeing up labor from the land to work in the new industrial mills of the 18th century. As the revolution in industry progressed a series of machines became available, which increased food production.

Transport:

The Industrial Revolution improved Britain's transport infrastructure with a turnpike road network, a canal and waterway network, and a railway network. Raw materials and finished products could be moved more quickly and cheaply than before. Improved transportation also allowed new ideas to spread quickly.

Canals:

Canals began to be built in the late 18th century to link the major manufacturing centres across the country. The first



successful canal was the Bridgewater Canal in North West England. These canals helped the growth of commercial activities.

Roads:

A number of new Roads were built by private people and companies who collected tolls from the users. They connected major cities of England which helped the quick transport of men, material and mails to distant parts.

Railways:

Wagon ways were used to move coal from mines. The introduction of railways made it highly successful in the transportation of passenger and freight. Many railway projects were undertaken. After completion of the railway projects, the workers did not return to the rural life styles. They remained in the cities adding additional work force to the factories.

Effects of Socialism:

Socialism was an economic theory that sprang almost directly from the Industrial Revolution. It was a reaction against the unregulated capitalism of the time. Socialism proposed that society as a whole should control the means of production. It advocated that the government exists only to oversee its initial phases and then to become nonexistent, leaving the people to govern themselves cooperatively. This contradicted the tenets of laissez-faire capitalism, which stated that the best total result for society was achieved if competition took its natural course. This movement was inspired by the problems that the Industrial Revolution presented for the common worker. Working

conditions, long hours, and low pay made many workers to come together and achieve a socialist system at least partially.

Effects on Capitalism:

Industrialization depends largely on capital – wealth available for investment in order to speed up development and make more wealth. This capital was one of the leading reasons as to why the British industrial economy prospered.

Factories and urbanization:

Industrialization led to the creation of the factories. The Cotton spinning activity was first to be mechanized. Later factory system developed. A large number of workers migrated to cities in search of employment. Many cotton mills were established at Manchester which is the first Industrial City of the World. The factory system speeded up urbanization.

Child labour:

Industrial Revolution led to the increase in population. Infant mortality rates reduced remarkably. Still there was limited scope for education. The children were expected to work at a less pay even though their efficiency was comparable with adults. There was no need of strength to operate machines but skilled labours were needed. Since skilled adults were not available child labour was the preferred choice in manufacturing industries.

Conclusion:

Thus the Industrial Revolution has brought drastic changes in the life of nations. It gave rise to urban centres requiring vast municipal services. It created a specialized and interdependent

economic life. It made the urban worker completely dependent and at the mercy of the employer. Relations between capitalist and labor were aggravated, and Marxism was the result of this unrest. The revolution also brought a need for a new type of state intervention to protect the laborer and to provide necessary services. Laissez faire gradually gave way to welfare capitalism in the United States, Britain, and elsewhere. It also led to the development of many economic and political theories by Adam Smith, David Richards, John Meynard Keynes etc., The Industrial Revolution also provided the economic base for the rise of professions, increase in population and improvement in living standards and Industrial Revolutions remains a primary goal of less developed nations.

Questions

Answer in 1 word or 1 sentence each (each carries 1 mark)

1. What is meant by 'revolutio'?
2. What was the period in which the Industrial Revolution took place?
3. Mention on which particular field the Industrial Revolution had its profound effect.
4. Where did the Industrial Revolution begin at first?
5. Who invented Water Frame?
6. Who invented the Spinning Jenny?
7. Mention the city in which Cotton Revolution began first.
8. Which city is called the 'Power house of the North'?
9. Where was the Coal Mining started first?
10. Why is James Watt famous for?

Answer in 2 words or 2 sentences (each carries 2 marks)

1. What is meant by Revolution?

2. Mention the fields in which changes took place during the Industrial Revolution.
3. Mention any two chemicals invented during the Industrial Revolution.
4. Who invented Gas Lighting on large scale? Which was the City where the Gas Lighting was introduced first?

Answer in 15-20 sentences (each carries 5 marks)

1. What were the main effects of the Industrial Revolution in the fields of Agriculture, Transport, Canals and Roads?
2. What were the main effects of the Industrial Revolution in the fields of Socialism, Capitalism, Factories and Urbanization and Child Labor?
3. Explain why the Industrial Revolution process first began in England.

Answer in 30-40 sentence (10 marks)

1. Describe the various effects of the Industrial Revolution.



8.2. THE AMERICAN WAR OF INDEPENDENCE: 1776-83.

Geographical discoveries and the exploration of America paved the way for the Europeans to migrate. After Reformation both the Catholics and the Protestants started to go to America. The first ship, in which the migrants came from Europe to America, was 'May Flower' and the first batch of migrants was called 'Pilgrim fathers'. Majority of them were the British, the French and the Spanish. The British had established 13 colonies on the eastern coastal area (present USA) of the Atlantic Ocean. They are 1. New Hampshire 2. Massachusetts 3. Rhode Island 4. Connecticut 5. New York 6. New Jersey 7. Maryland 8. Virginia 9. North Carolina 10. South Carolina 11. Delaware 12. Pennsylvania 13. Georgia. The French established their colonies in Canada and the Spanish in South America.

The British parliament framed many Acts to make their Empire very strong in America. These led to lessen the respect of the colonists towards their motherland and develop hatredness. The colonists knew that the British needed only profit from them, but not their progress. So they decided to fight for their rights and freedom.



Thirteen British colonies in America.

Causes

1. Commercial policy of England

British parliament thought that the colonies are for the benefit of the motherland. So they levied heavy taxes and to restrict trade of the colonies they introduced Navigation act.

The main features of this act are:

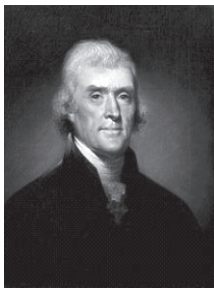
- a) The raw materials produced in America (coffee, cotton, tobacco, etc) should be exported to England only.
- b) The essential goods like cotton, linen, cloth, glass, sugar, etc. that America needed should be imported from England only.
- c) The Americans should use only the British ships for trade to keep away competition of other European nations.
- d) Iron, blue, paper, cotton, linen, Cloth, etc. that were produced by England shouldn't be produced in America.
- e) England's merchant-agent should be kept and be given security.

2. Seven years war.

England could not tolerate the progress of France, and did not want her to establish settlements in their neighborhood. The colonies also wanted British protection against the French. Therefore England declared war in 1756, which lasted till 1763. It is called the 'seven years war'. England won the war. The war ended with the Treaty of Paris, and France had to give away Canada to England. Thus the American colonies were free from the fear of the French attack.

3. Intellectual causes.

The colonists set up their own social and political institutions. Their enlightenment was due to their own heritage. John Adams, a philosopher remarked, "The Revolution was in the minds and hearts of Americans and it had started even before the American war of independence". Roger Williams, a symbol of American enlightenment, preached Religious tolerance and separation of State from the Church. Anne Hutchinson, also pleaded for Religious tolerance, Liberty of press and compulsory education. Several writers like **Thomas Paine**, **John Locke**, **Sydney Harrington**, **Samuel Adams** and **Thomas Jefferson** urged for total independence. **Thomas Paine of England**, had pleaded in his book '**Common Sense**' that complete freedom should be given to Americans and also expressed that revolutionary ways are inevitable for colonists to get Freedom. **Thomas Jefferson**, a famous lawyer issued the famous "**Declaration of Independence**" He argued that whenever any government tries to interfere in the fundamental rights of people, it is perfectly right to overthrow such government and establish a new one by force if necessary. **John Locke** had published. '**Two Treatises of Government**' which is considered as the Bible of American war of Independence. Thus the American enlightened class and philosophers laid the strong foundation for the American Revolution.



Thomas Jefferson (1743-1826) was an American Founding Father, the principal author of the Declaration of Independence and the third President of the United States (1801-1809)

The Declaration of Independence: is the document in which the Thirteen Colonies of America declared independence from the Kingdom of Great Britain and explained their justifications for separation. It was ratified by the Second Continental Congress on July 4, 1776. This is celebrated as Independence Day in the United States.

4. British taxation policy:

The seven years war led to a financial burden on England. To meet this, England levied taxes on goods imported into the colonies.

The Sugar and Molasses Act which was passed in 1764, levied taxes on sugar and molasses. The tax on molasses was a hindrance to the production of wine. It led to the increase of smuggling activities and the colonists faced many problems. Hence they publicly opposed this tax; the British parliament had to decrease the tax on sugar and molasses.

The stamp Act was passed in 1764, which declared that stamp duties were to be paid on all legal documents. The colonists opposed this Act. They said that the British parliament did not have the right to tax the colonists when they were not given representation in the parliament. Their slogan was “**No Taxation without Representation**” The colonists showed their anger by burning the stamps. The British parliament had to withdraw this Act.

In 1767 the British parliament passed Townshend Act. This Act imposed heavy taxes on Glass, Paper, and Tea. The parliament sent troops to help the officers in collecting these taxes. In spite of this colonists protested against this Act. The people of Massachusetts revolted, the British sent the troops to put down the revolt.

The British troops occupied Boston in 1768. In a fight between the British and the colonists at Boston, five people lost their lives and many were injured. This is called as “Boston Massacre” (1770). As a result of the Massacre the parliament withdrew the taxes on Glass, Paper, etc but the tax on Tea was retained to show that the British parliament had the right to tax the colonies.

Boston Tea Party: British parliament passed an act in 1773 and gave the monopoly of Tea trade to the East India Company. Colonists resented it. Cheaper Tea powder was available in the black market. When the first consignment came to New York and Philadelphia they were forced to go back to England. But again when another ship loaded with Tea packets arrived at Boston in 1773, the colonists disguised themselves as 'Red Indians' under the leadership of **Paul Raverre**, entered the ship and threw the Tea boxes into the ocean. This incident is called 'Boston Tea Party'.

5. Coercive Act:

In 1774 the British Prime minister Lord North Broke had introduced four coercive acts on the colonists for taking revenge against Boston Tea Party commotion. They are

- a) Boston harbour should be closed till Massachusetts compensated for Britain's loss due to the Boston Tea Party.
- b) Full powers should be given to the commander by cancelling the decree of Massachusetts.
- c) Permission should be given to the British soldiers to reside in the private houses.
- d) British soldiers should not be subjugated at Massachusetts court.

These acts were called as intolerable acts of 1774 by the colonists but thereby they helped in uniting the colonists.

6. Quebec Act:

Quebec Act, which was passed in 1774 granted most of the Ohio country to the French, who first held it. This was not liked by the colonists because they wanted to expand

westwards. Also the Act permitted the French who lived in Canada to follow Catholicism. This was opposed by protestant Americans. The colonists felt that the British were following 'Divide and Rule' policy and hence their opposition increased.



Course

On 5th September 1774 the 56 representatives of 12 colonies excluding Georgia assembled at Philadelphia. They decided the future plan of action. **The first Congress of Philadelphia (1774)** drew up “**Declaration of Rights**”. It confirmed that the colonists could not be taxed without their consent.

Second Congress of Philadelphia (1775):

The First Congress of Philadelphia which was followed by a few clashes between the British soldiers and the colonists at Lexington in Massachusetts resulted in the Second Congress of Philadelphia in 1775. Colonists still requested the British Crown for a peaceful solution. But George III the British

monarch considered colonists as rebels. The delegates appointed George Washington to lead the colonial forces against the British. So the colonists declared their independence from the control of their mother country England on **4th July 1776**. Even to this day, America celebrates its Independence day on 4th July of every year.

The British were infuriated with the colonist's attitude. They declared war on America. In the Bunkerhill battle of July 1775 the colonial army was defeated by the British army under the leadership of Sir William Ho. But the colonial army won in **Trenton** and **Prinistine** battle. These victories enhanced the prestige of George Washington and increased the dignity of the nation. On 17th October 1777 the British commander-in chief surrendered completely to the colonial army in the **Saratoga** battle. Meanwhile France, Spain, and Holland supported the colonists in the war and gave moral co-operation. France took an active part by giving military support to America. In 1781 George Washington, with the helping hand of French commander Lafayette attacked the British army at Yorktown. The British army under the leadership of Lord Cornwallis surrendered completely. Thus the war came to an end by the treaty of Paris in 1783. America became independent.



British surrender at Saratoga



Signing the treaty of

Results:**Emergence of the U S A.**

A new nation called 'United States of America' was born. They adopted the Republican type of government. In 1787 America adopted a republican form of Government with a federal structure. It became the first country in the world to adopt a written constitution. George Washington became the first president of USA.

Loss to England

According to the Paris treaty concluded in 1783, Britain suffered heavily in terms of economy and lost 13 resourceful colonies.

Triumph of Democracy.

Victory of Americans strengthened the democratic ideologies and principles all over the world. It inspired patriots, who fought against Imperialism.

A Lesson to England.

After losing 13 colonies in the war, England changed its attitude towards its other colonies. The belief that the sun never sets in their Empire received a deathblow.

Inspiration for French Revolution.

The French soldiers, who participated in the American Revolution, were inspired by the revolutionary slogans of the Americans. This resulted in the outbreak of the French revolution in 1789.

End of the monarchy in England.

After being defeated in the American war of independence, the English king Charles III, lost his prestige and popularity. He was subjected to come under the rule of the parliament. This led to the constitutional kingship.

**George Washington: (1732-1799)**

George Washington was born on 22nd Feb 1732. Augustine Washington and Mary Ball Washington, were his parents. His father was a farmer in Virginia. He gained military experience during the Seven Years War in Europe. This earned a great reputation as a capable leader. After the close of war he went to his estates. Then he was called upon to lead the colonial army. He filled in the army fresh enthusiasm and led it to success. George Washington became the **first president of independent America**. He died in 1799.

Questions

Answer in one word or one sentence (each one mark)

1. In which year did the American war of Independence take place?
2. Who was the commander in chief of the colonial army?
3. Who was the first President of USA?
4. Who was the king of England during the American war of Independence?
5. Who drafted the Declaration of American Independence?
6. In which year was the American constitution adopted?

Answer in 2 word or 2 sentences (each 2 marks)

1. Name any two colonies of America.
2. What is 'Boston Tea Party'?
3. Mention any two factors of the Navigation Act.
4. Name any two philosophers who influenced the American war of Independence.
5. Who drafted the Declaration of American Independence? When?
6. Name any two taxes imposed by England on the colonies.

Answer in 15-20 sentences (each 5 marks)

1. Describe the results of the American war of Independence.

Answer in 30-40 sentences (each 10 marks)

1. Explain causes for the American war of Independence.



8.3 THE FRENCH REVOLUTION OF 1789.

The French Revolution of 1789 was the most important landmark in the History of France in particular and of Europe and the world in general. This revolution ended the royal despotism that existed in France since many centuries. It gave the world new ideas of liberty, equality and fraternity. “With the outbreak of the French Revolution, the entire European History merged in the history of one nation, one event and one man. The nation was France, the event was the French Revolution and the man was Napoleon Bonaparte”. These words reveal the significance of this revolution. This revolution aimed at the establishment of socio-economic equality and responsible government in France.

Causes:

(1) Political Causes:

France was ruled by the ‘Bourbon Dynasty’ for many centuries. The French monarchy was absolute. Louis XIV, the king of France, who was called the ‘Grand Monarch of Europe’, went to the extent of saying “I am the state, I am the Government”. He believed in the ‘Divine Right theory of Kings’. He neglected the interests of the people and ruled according to his whims and fancies. His successor Louis XV had no ability to rule the nation. During his reign, France fought many wars viz., the War of Austrian Succession, the Seven Years War and others. In these wars France was defeated. Besides, it was a great financial burden on the French exchequer. He was more addicted to the worldly pleasures and did not look into the problems of the people. He often said, “After me, the deluge”.

Divine Right Theory: It is a politico – religious concept that existed in almost every part of the world including Europe. According to this theory, the king was considered as an incarnation or mediator or representative of God who

had come to earth to rule over the people. Therefore, the people believed that obeying the king's order was their duty.

The ruler at the time of French Revolution was Louis XVI. He was also an inefficient and weak ruler. Personally he was a good man, but as a King he was a bad administrator. He was under the influence of Nobles and Clergy. Added to this, he married the Austrian Princess, Marie Antoinette. It was opposed by the French people. The King was a puppet of the Queen. Her interference in the administration caused many hardships to the common people. Moreover, she had lavishly spent money for her luxurious life. On account of her extravagance, she was nick named as 'Madame Deficit'.



Louis XVI



Marie Antoinette

The administrative system of France was also defective. The French rulers were addicted to women, wine and wealth. They neglected their responsibilities and welfare of the people. The officials were highly corrupt. There was no uniform legal system

throughout the country. This type of political anarchy, absolutism and misrule of the French rulers increased the dissatisfaction of the people and led to the outbreak of this revolution.

(1) Social Causes: -

Social inequality was one of the main causes for this revolution. On the top of the social hierarchy was King and his royal family, next came the Clergy – I Estate and Nobility – II Estate and below them Commoners – III Estate. The first two estates were privileged classes and the Third estate was unprivileged class, the Commoners, consisting of peasants, Workers, Teachers, Lawyers, Doctors and Philosophers, etc. The people of I and II estates were in minority who were less than 2% of the French population. The first two estates monopolized all the highest offices in the army, church and the Government. They were also exempted from paying taxes and free from the authority of the court. They were the owners of enormous wealth and exploited the peasants and workers. On the other hand, the conditions of the commoners were deplorable. They had to pay all taxes and were not eligible for any higher governmental services. “The Nobles fight, the Clergy pray and the Commons pay”, was a popular statement in France. Thus the majority of the French people were disgusted owing to their social inferiority and discrimination, which paved the way for the outbreak of this revolution.

(2) Economic Causes:

The policy of taxation in France was defective and unfair. The burden of tax mostly fell on the Commoners, because the Clergy and Nobles were exempted from all kind of taxes. Commoners had to pay ‘taille’ (Property Tax), ‘gabelle’ (Salt Tax), ‘tithe’ (Religious Tax) and other cesses to the Government. The peasants and workers on paying all these

taxes were left with only 18 to 20% of their earnings. Even during the famines they had to pay taxes and were suffering from untold miseries. Thousands of people died due to starvation. "If 10 people died in France, 9 due to the starvation and the tenth one due to indigestion" was the condition of France on the eve of French Revolution. This kind of economic exploitation and discontent among the common people made them to revolt against the discriminative taxation policy of the French Government.

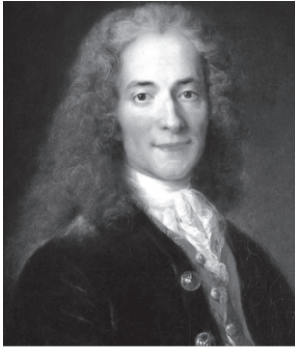
(3) Intellectual Causes:

There were many great philosophers during 18th century in France. They critically wrote about the political tyranny, social inequality and economic exploitation in France and also insisted for reforms. Montesquieu, Voltaire, Jean Jacques Rousseau and Diderot were the most important philosophers of France who lived before the outbreak of French Revolution.

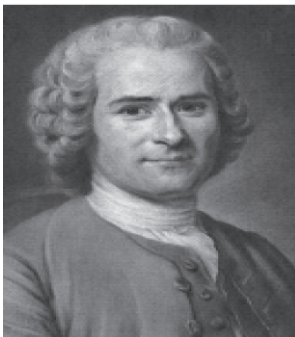
Montesquieu (1689-1775):

He wrote 'The Spirit of Laws'. He appreciated the parliamentary democracy of England and advocated 'The Theory of Separation of Powers'. According to this theory, to prevent tyranny and absolutism, three organs of the Government - Legislative, Executive and Judiciary - should function independently. Only then, the liberty of the people will be safeguarded. He also argued that law must be supreme and all the people are subordinate to law.



Voltaire (1694-1778):

He was a famous satirist. He wrote 'The Letters on the English', in which he asked people to apply 'Reason' in every field. He strongly criticized the church and social inequality. He denounced church as an infamous thing. He supported the benevolent despotism. But he was not in favour of democracy. He told that he would like to be ruled by a lion, rather than by hundred rats. He also insisted for reforms to improve the conditions of France.

Jean Jacques Rousseau (1712-1778):

Jean Jacques
Rousseau

He is known as 'The Father of the French Revolution'. He was the greatest philosopher of France. He upheld the popular sovereignty in his famous book, 'Social Contract'. It has been regarded as the 'Bible of the French Revolution', which lit the fire of Revolution. He told "Man is born free, but every where he is bound in chains". He proved that the Government was the result of social contract between the people and the ruler. The ruler should look after the welfare of the people. They have right to recall or replace the ruler in case he fails to discharge his duties. It was he, who gave the three great principles or watch words of the French Revolution, viz., 'Liberty, Equality and Fraternity'. His other books are 'Confession' and 'Laws'. Thus his philosophic ideas were the great source of inspiration for the French Revolution. Hence, Napoleon Bonaparte rightly said, "The French Revolution would not have occurred, if Rousseau was not born".

Diderot (1713-1784), the editor of the book 'Encyclopedia', condemned the privileged classes.

Thus the writings of the above and many other philosophers inspired the French people for the Great Revolution in 1789.

(5) Influence of American War of Independence:

The French army under the leadership of Lafayette went to America to support their war of independence against England. There, the French soldiers came to know about the American's idea of liberty, struggle for their political rights and their sacrificing attitude. Americans were successful in this war. On their return, the French soldiers began to spread the political ideas of the Americans in order to establish democratic government in France.

(6) Immediate cause - Financial Bankruptcy of France:

The Financial condition of France was deplorable by about 1789 . National debt increased owing to the costly wars and lavish expenditures of the King and his family for their luxurious life. There was no difference between the state and the King's personal expenditures. Unprivileged class was paying all the taxes. Further, imposition of more taxes on them was not possible. Privileged class, which had immense property, was not ready to pay taxes. Added to this, a great famine broke out in France in 1788. Millions of people were affected by the famine. All these made the financial condition deteriorate further.

The finance ministers of France, such as Turgot, Neckar and Colonne, suggested the reduction in unnecessary expenditures and to impose some taxes on privileged classes to solve the financial crisis. This was opposed by the privileged classes. Under their influence, the King removed the ministers from their offices, one after another. Thus, the financial bankruptcy continued in France. Under these

circumstances, Louis XVI summoned the meeting of Estates General Council (French Parliament) to discuss about the financial crisis. This meeting was not called since 175 years. This was the immediate cause for the outbreak of the French Revolution.

Course:

Beginning of the French Revolution:

French Parliament met in May 1789. Louis XVI called it to solve the financial crisis. Formerly the three estates were sitting in separate chambers. The third estate (Middle Class) insisted for joint sitting, which was not agreed by the first two estates and the king. The third estate, which was in majority came out of the parliament and assembled at a tennis court on 20th June 1789 and took an oath that they should not disperse until a constitution for France was framed. This is famous as 'The Tennis Court Oath'. They constituted a National Assembly. Then the news spread that the king was intending to dissolve the Assembly. At this Parisians revolted and the mob took the Paris administration and attacked the Bastille, a central prison on 14th July 1789. The prisoners were released and the prison was razed to the ground. This prison was the symbol of tyrannical regime in France. The fall of Bastille marked the beginning of French Revolution. Even today, July 14th is celebrated as 'National Day' in France.

Spread of the Revolution:

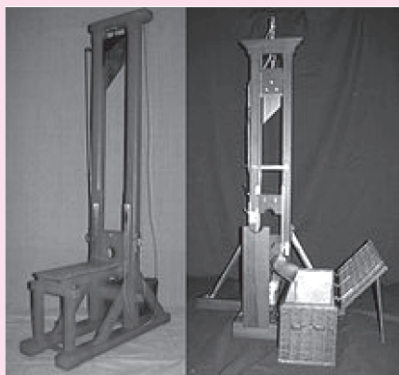
The Revolution spread over France. There were two groups among the revolutionaries viz., Girondists (Moderates) and Jacobins (Extremists). Church and State were reformed. Church

property was nationalized and salaries of the Clergy were fixed. Paris mob marched to Versailles and brought the king and his family and were kept as captives in the palace of Tuileries in Paris. In 1791 a Constituent Assembly was set up which framed a Constitution for France and there by declared the 'Rights of Man'. The new political order was based on the principles of Liberty, Equality and Fraternity. The declaration granted individuals the freedom of property, speech, writing, religious belief and political opinion.

The constituent assembly was dissolved and a new Legislative Assembly came into existence. The King attempted to escape from France. Paris mob demanded the Assembly to suspend the King. The Legislative Assembly was replaced by the 'National Convention' headed by Jacobins.

Reign of Terror:

Suspected loyalists were massacred in September 1792 by a machine called Guillotine. Since thousands of people were massacred in this month, it is called as 'September Massacre'



Guillotine: It is a machine which severs head of the victim. In this a minimum wood supports a heavy blade. It vertically comes down when it is released and severs the head. It was introduced in French revolution to inflict capital punishment. It was named after Joseph Ignace Guillotine, a member of the National Assembly. Because he was instrumental in passing a law requiring all death sentences..

The National Convention abolished the monarchy. France became a Republic on 22nd September 1792. The National Convention treated King Louis XVI as a traitor and sent him to Guillotine in January 1793. This resulted in the formation of a coalition by Austria, Prussia, Britain, Holland and Spain against France as they feared that the Revolution may spread to their countries. The National Convention granted all executive authorities to the 'Committee of Public Safety' which was established to suppress anti-revolutionaries. It was successful in breaking the coalition. But internally it let loose a 'Reign of Terror'. It was during this period Marie Antoinette and other royal family members were also Guillotined. Robespierre, head of the Committee of Public Safety suspected people of all classes and they were Guillotined. The Reign of Terror finally came to an end in July 1794, when Robespierre himself was guillotined by the French people.

In 1795 the Directory government was formed with five members. It remained till 1799 when Napoleon Bonaparte captured power by dissolving it.

Results:

- (1) This revolution abolished absolute monarchy and ended the political anarchy and misrule of the French Kings. It paved way for the establishment of a Republican Government in France based on the democratic principles, as propounded by Montesquieu, J.J. Rousseau and others.
- (2) The French Revolution ended Feudalism and hereditary aristocracy. It proved that suppressed ones can revolt against the oppressive government.

- (3) It put an end to the special privileges of the Clergy and Nobility and their properties were confiscated. Thus social inequality also ended.
- (4) The new constitution declared the rights of man, which upheld the 'Doctrine of popular sovereignty'.
- (5) This revolution popularized the ideas of Liberty, Equality and Fraternity in other countries of the world.
- (6) It spread the feeling of unity and taught the principle of Nationalism among the French people. Hence, it became a source of inspiration to the Unification of Italy and Germany and finally freedom movements in other parts of the world including India. H.A.L Fisher says, "If cold attacks France, the entire Europe sneezes".
- (7) This revolution caused heavy bloodshed. During 'The Reign of Terror' nearly 17000 people were killed. Even the king Louis XVI, his Queen Marie Antoinette and others were guillotined.
- (8) The Directory government, which came to power after the revolution, failed to rule properly. Again there was chaos and confusion in France. This gave an opportunity for the rise of Napoleon Bonaparte as the military Dictator of France. He called himself as "the Child of Revolution".

Thus the French Revolution was indeed a great event in the history of France. The political developments after this revolution greatly changed the course of the History of Europe and also the world.

Questions:

Answer in one word or one sentence each: [Each carries one Mark]

- 1) In which year did the French Revolution begin?
- 2) Name the dynasty that ruled France.
- 3) Who was called the 'Grand Monarch of Europe'?
- 4) Who was the King of France at the time of French Revolution?
- 5) What was the nickname of Marie Antoinette?
- 6) Which was the famous book of Montesquieu?
- 7) Name the book of Voltaire.
- 8) Name the French Philosopher who supported the benevolent despotism.
- 9) Who is known as 'The Father of French Revolution'?
- 10) Which book is regarded as the 'Bible of French Revolution'?
- 11) Who wrote the book called 'Social Contract'?
- 12) In which year did the fall of Bastille take place?
- 13) Who was the head of the 'Committee of Public Safety'?

Answer in two words or two sentences each: [Each carries Two Marks]

- 1) Name any two rulers of France on the Eve of French Revolution.
- 2) Who were the King and Queen of France at the time of French Revolution?
- 3) Mention any two differences between the privileged and unprivileged groups of French society.

- 4) Name the three classes of French society.
- 5) Name any two important philosophers of France.
- 6) What were the principles or watch words of the French Revolution?
- 7) Name any two books of J.J. Rousseau.
- 8) Name any two taxes paid by the French people.
- 9) Name any two finance ministers of France on the Eve of French Revolution.
- 10) What did the Finance Ministers of France suggest to solve the financial crisis?
- 11) What is the Tennis Court Oath?
- 12) Name the groups of French Revolutionaries?
- 13) What is 'September Massacre'?

Answer in 15 to 20 sentences each: [Each carries 5 Marks]

- 1) Explain the social and Economic causes for the French Revolution.
- 2) Give an account of the Intellectual causes for the French Revolution.
- 3) Write a note on the political and the immediate causes for the French Revolution.
- 4) Analyze the results of the French Revolution.

Answer in 30 to 40 sentences each: [Each carries 10 Marks]

- 1) Describe the various causes for the outbreak of French Revolution of 1789.
- 2) Briefly write about the causes and results of French Revolution of 1789.



8.4 The Russian Revolution - 1917

Introduction: The Russian Revolution was an economic Revolution influenced by the Marxist Ideas. It aimed at providing peace to the nation, food to hungry and land to the tiller. It led to the establishment of the Communist Government for the first time in the history of world. The Revolution paved the way for the establishment of similar governments in different countries of the world. The American and the French Revolutions upheld democratic principles, where as the Russian Revolution advocated Socialistic principles. It is also to be noted that after the French revolution world witnessed another revolution after a long span of time.

The term 'Tsar' is derived from the Latin word Caesar, which was intended to mean 'Emperor'. Sometimes, it is also spelt as Czar.

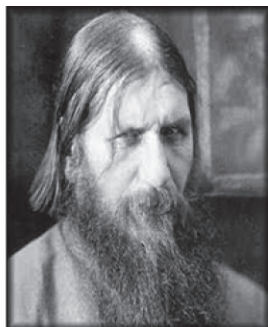
Causes:

1. Political causes:

Russia was ruled by the Tsars. The Romanov dynasty ruled over Russia, which was the largest country of the world. The Tsars were autocratic and inefficient. They ruled the kingdom on the principle of Divine Origin. The administration was centralized and very corrupt, which affected the lives of the people. Duma (Parliament) was a legislative body, but it was not regularly consulted by the Tsars. It was many a times abolished by the Tsars at different points of time. The administration was troubled by the constant interference by people like the infamous monk Rasputin and Tsarina (Queen) Alexandra.



Tsar Nicolas II



Rasputin



Tsarina Alexandra and
Tsar Nicolas II

1. Social and Economic Causes:

The Russian Society was divided into two categories.

a) The privileged class b) The unprivileged class.

The privileged class included the Royals, the land lords and the capitalists (factory owners). They were rich and also had a high status in the society. Civil, administrative and military posts were reserved for them. The unprivileged class mainly consisted of the peasants and the workers. It formed the majority population. They were living in poverty and also were exploited by the privileged classes. Serfdom was abolished in 1861 but the condition of the peasants did not change for the better.

The Russian economy before the Revolution was primarily agricultural. The Industrial Revolution created a large working class. These workers worked for long hours for low wages and they worked in dangerous and unhygienic conditions. The accidents and deaths were not compensated. The Russian Industries created wealth for the owner but affected the agriculturists. As most of the industrialists were land lords, they neglected agriculture and forced agricultural workers to work in their industries. The agricultural production decreased and it resulted in inflation. The people were pushed to hardships.

Nihilism– It was revolutionary movement of 19th century Russia. Nihilists believed in reason, materialism, and radical changes. They wanted to bring these changes in society and government through assassination and terrorism.

2. Russification:

Tsar Alexander III and Nicholas II implemented an oppressive, autocratic and centralized administration. The slogan was 'One Nation, One language, One Church and One Tsar' for Russia. The Poles, Finns, Jews, Germans, etc. in Russia were subjugated to this policy. This is called Russification. The policy was started by Tsar Alexander III and continued by Tsar Nicholas II. The autocratic policies of the Tsar were severely opposed by the Nihilists, who killed the officers and agents of the Tsar. The Government ruthlessly hunted them down and summarily murdered them. Russia encouraged the 'Pan-Slav' movement in the Balkans. The Balkan states looked at Russia as 'the Big Brother'.

3. Role of Intellectuals:

In the Russian Revolution the role of intellectuals, that too of writers was immense. The major literary works like **Leo Tolstoy's** – 'War and Peace' (1869) and 'Anna Karenina', **Fyodor Dostoyevsky's** – 'Poor Folk' (1846), **Maxim Gorky's** 'Mother', and 'Children of the sun', **Turgenev's** 'Fathers and sons' (1862) etc generated a new sense of awareness among Russians. It made them reflect over questions of human freedom, fate, suffering and the meaning of life. They began to realize that human beings were not destined to endure the tyranny let loose by a handful of autocrats.

As a result of regular contacts with Germany, many Russian intellectuals were drawn towards Marxism. Prominent among them were Lenin, Kautsky and Trotsky. The writings of Karl Marx (1818-1883) and Friedrich Engels (1820-1895) were widely read. Marx's major works are 'Communist Manifesto' (1848) and 'Das Capital' (1867). These writings upheld the

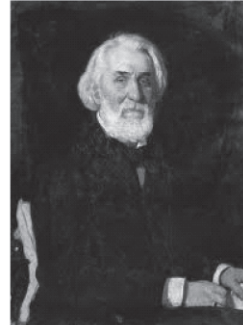
principles of socialism based on social and economic equality. The call of Karl Marx to the worker: “Workers of the world unite; you have nothing to loose but your chains of Slavery”, inspired thousands of young men and women.



Leo Tolstoy



Leo Tolstoy



Turgenev



Karl Marx (1818-1883): Karl Heinrich Marx was a German Philosopher, Economist, Sociologist, Historian, Journalist and revolutionary socialist. His ideas played a significant role in the development of the social sciences and the progress of the socialist movement. Marx is considered as one of the most influential thinkers in history. Marx's view of history, which came to be called as Historical Materialism and theories about society, economics and politics are collectively known as Marxism. He believed that socialism would, in its turn, eventually be replaced by a stateless, classless society called communism.

5. Bloody Sunday incident:

On Sunday, 22nd January 1905, Father Gapon led a huge rally of workers and wanted to meet the Tsar to express their grievances. Most of them were killed by the army. This is known as 'Bloody Sunday' and caused a great resentment among the Russians about the Tsar.



Bloody Sunday: The first spark of rebellion occurred in 1905 when students of the universities in Moscow and St. Petersburg organized rallies against the autocratic rule. On 22nd January, 1905, Sunday, a large number of workers led by Father Gapon tried to meet the Tsar at St. Petersburg to express their grievances. Most of them were ruthlessly killed by the army. This is known as Bloody Sunday. It caused great resentment and the Tsar finally agreed in August 1905 to carry out administrative reforms.

6. Military Causes:

The defeat of Russia by a small country like Japan in 1905 added to the resentment of Russians against the Tsar. The thought that the Tsars were invincible was shattered. Further Russia entered into the First World War along with England and France. Russia had strong artillery, but its military was highly disorganized. Proper strategies of Warfare could not be evolved to suit the needs of the time, in spite of the rich store of arms and ammunition. It faced another military setback when it was defeated in 1915 in the First World War. These debacles exposed the military weakness of Russia to the world. The above reasons led to the Russian Revolution.

Course:

The working classes in Russia were influenced by Marxism. They organized Workmen's Social Democratic Party. The Party split into two in 1903 on ideological grounds. The radicals, led

by Lenin, came to be known as Bolsheviks, while the moderates led by Alexander Kerensky were called Mensheviks.

Bolsheviks and Mensheviks

The Russian Social Democratic Workers Party was a Marxist political party. In 1903 at the Party Congress members disagreed with each other. The Party was dividing into two groups, the Bolsheviks and the Mensheviks. "Those who were in majority" were called Bolsheviks. "Those who were in minority" were called Mensheviks.

After the defeat of Russia in 1915, in the World War-I, revolutionaries insisted on overthrowing the Tsarist regime. Rasputin was killed by the end of 1916. Demand for constitutional reform in the 'Duma' began before the World War I itself. Tsar dissolved 'Duma' and arrested its members. Negligence of administration had adverse effect on food supply. On March 8th 1917, women workers organised a protest at Petrograd demanding food. On March 9th large number of workers joined the protest. They gave a call for general protest on March, 10th. Soldiers were ordered to open fire on these protesters. But they refused to obey the orders and expressed their support to the workers. It was a great setback to Tsar Nicholas II. Ultimately the Tsar had to abdicate the throne on March 15th.



Alexander Kerensky

After ousting the Tsar, a provisional government was established in Russia headed by Kerensky. This is called as the **Menshevik Revolution** or the **March Revolution**. The government ensured freedom of speech and association, upheld the freedom of press and religion and encouraged liberal reforms. But the provisional government continued to

participate in the First World War and suffered serious setbacks. The Menshevik Government under Kerensky failed to remain in power, because, the aspirations of the Russians for land, peace and security were not fulfilled. Finally, the Bolsheviks, led by Lenin, challenged the Menshevik government on 15th October, 1917, and ultimately overthrew them on **25th October 1917**. This is called as the **October Revolution** or **Bolshevik Revolution**. With the help of 'Red army', Lenin who came to power fulfilled these aspirations by using force. Thus U.S.S.R (Union of Soviet Socialist Republic) was established after the October Revolution. Lenin became the head of the Republic and continued in office till his death in 1924.

Russia was following the Julian Calendar till February 1918. This calendar was 13 days behind the Gregorian Calendar which we use today. 25th October, 1917 was the date of the Revolution as per the Julian Calendar. But after accepting the Gregorian calendar the day of Revolution is celebrated on 7th November every year.

Results:

1. The autocratic rule of the Tsar came to an end and a constitutional republic based on socialist ideals was formed in Russia.
2. The USSR was established, which became a counter-force to the USA. This led to the rise of two power-blocs in the world, whose rivalries gave rise to Cold War after the World War II.
3. The conditions of workers and peasants improved because of the implementation of the New Economic Policy (NEP) in 1921.
4. Russia achieved tremendous progress under new communist Government and emerged as a powerful nation.
5. Communist ideology began to spread to different parts of the world, including Asia, Africa, Eastern Europe and Latin America.

The Russian Revolution was an important event in the history of the modern world. It showed that the socialist ideas of Marx and Engels were not totally Utopian, but could be practiced with success. It demonstrated the power of the working class in challenging oppression and autocracy, and in establishing a state based on egalitarian principles. It also showed that a well-planned economy could bring about many progressive changes in a country.

Socialism - Social and economic doctrine that calls for public rather than private ownership or control of property and natural resources. According to the socialist view, individuals do not live or work in isolation but live in cooperation with one another. Furthermore, everything that people produce is in some sense a social product, and everyone who contributes to the production of a good is entitled to a share in it. Society as a whole, therefore, should own or at least control property for the benefit of all its members.

Communism - The political and economic doctrine that aims to replace private property and a profit-based economy with public ownership and communal control of at least the major means of production (e.g., mines, mills, and factories) and the natural resources of a society.

Lenin (1870-1924):



Lenin was born in Simbirsk on 22nd April, 1870. His original name was Vladimir Ilich Ulyanov. His father was a school inspector who died when Lenin was sixteen. After this, his elder brother Alexander was executed for making an attempt to assassinate the Tsar Nicholas II. Lenin was influenced by Marxism at an early age and he became a revolutionary.

He was arrested in 1895 and later exiled to Siberia, where he wrote a book 'Development of capitalism in Russia' in 1899.

Later, Lenin escaped from Siberia and lived in exile in Switzerland. He joined Plekhanov in Geneva in 1900 and planned to launch a newspaper called 'Iskra' (spark). In 1903 he became the leader of a extremist revolutionary group called the Bolshevik party. He continued his fight against the Tsarist regime and supported the revolution of 1905. On 25th October, 1917, he overthrew the Menshevik government of Kerensky. He appealed to soldiers, poor peasants and workers, and promised to provide "Peace, Land, Bread".

Lenin withdrew from the First World War through the treaty of Brest-Litovsk (1917). A new constitution was adopted in 1918. He introduced the New Economic Policy (NEP) in March, 1921. The Union of Soviet Socialist Republic (USSR) was formed on 30th December, 1922. He successfully redressed the problems of unemployment, food scarcity and retarded industrial growth. Trade and commerce, communication, industries and banking were nationalized. England and France who hated this new ideology supported the Counter Revolution in Russia. Lenin was successful in crushing the foreign and domestic danger with the help of Red Army and the 'Cheka' the Secret Police. Lenin passed away at Gorky on 21st January, 1924.

Activity: List the differences and similarities between the French Revolution and Russian Revolution.

QUESTIONS

Answer in a word or sentence. (Each carries 1 Mark)

1. Which was the principle advocated by the Russian Revolution?
2. Who was the Tsar ruling Russia at the time of revolution?
3. Which was the dynasty ruling Russia at the time of Revolution?
4. Name the Queen of Tsar Nicholas-II.
5. Who was the monk who influenced the administration of Tsar Nicholas-II?
6. On what principles were the Tsars ruling Russia?
7. Who introduced the principle of Russification?
8. Who wrote the text 'Poor Folk'?
9. Who wrote the book 'Fathers and sons'?
10. When did the bloody Sunday take place?
11. Which nation defeated Russia in 1905?
12. Who was the leader of Mensheviks?

13. Name the party that was led by Lenin.
14. Under which leader the provisional Government was formed in Russia?
15. Expand – N.E.P
16. Expand – USSR.

Answer in 2 words or 2 sentences.(each carries 2 Marks)

1. Name the two classes of the Russian Society.
2. Which was the slogan of Russification?
3. Name any two intellectuals who influenced the Russian revolution.
4. Name the two works of Leo Tolstoy.
5. Who was Maxim Gorky? Mention his works.
6. Name the intellectuals of Russia who were influenced by Karl Marx.
7. Mention two works of Karl Marx ?
8. What was the call given by Karl Marx to the world laborers?

9. What is 'Bloody Sunday'?

10. Name the two parties during the Russian revolution.

Answer in 15 - 20 sentences. (each carries 5 Marks)

1. Explain the social and economic factors for the Russian revolution.
2. Explain the role of intellectuals in the Russian Revolution.
3. Explain the course of the Russian Revolution.
4. Describe the role of Lenin in Russian Revolution.

Answer in 30 - 40 sentences. (10 Marks)

Explain the causes and Results of Russian Revolution.



Chapter-9

NAPOLEON BONAPARTE AND RISE OF NATIONALISM

Nationalism means loyalty and devotion of the people to their Nation. It is also described as strong feeling of love of the people towards their own culture, language and Nation. This chapter describes how Napoleonic wars, policies and administration led to the rise of Nationalism in France and Europe. It finally led to the unification of Italy and Germany.

Chapter-9.1

NAPOLEON BONAPARTE (1769-1821)

French Revolution has produced a great hero and one of the greatest military generals and administrators, the world ever produced. For more than 15 years, he was the most prominent figure of Europe. He was none other than Napoleon Bonaparte. In fact the period from 1799 to 1815 is considered as 'Napoleonic Era'.



“I was born when my country was dying”, said Napoleon. It was his Endeavour to give a new lease of life to his country, France. In a sense he was, “The Child of the Revolution” in his reforms and “The Destroyer of the Revolution” in his military efforts.

Early career:

Napoleon was born at Ajaccio in the island of Corsica on August 15th 1769. His parents were Count Charles Bonaparte and Countess Leticia Romalina. During his childhood he cultivated self confidence, an ability to work hard and immense ambition. He was educated at Brienne (in Austria) and then in the Military Academy of Paris. He took keen interest in the study of military science. He joined the French army at the age of seventeen as an artillery officer. Because of his ability he rose from post to post. During the French Revolution he proved his talent by suppressing two rebellions against the French government.

Rise of Napoleon:

In 1796, the Directory government appointed Napoleon the commander of the French army in Italy. His Italian campaign was a great success. He defeated the Sardinians, and then Austrians. By the Treaty of 'Campo-Formio' in 1797 he gained immense success for France.

Napoleon started re-drawing the map of Europe through his conquests. Arbitrary governments were imposed on Italy and Belgium. His Egyptian campaign was aimed at striking the British Imperialism. In the 'Battle of the Pyramids' Napoleon could score a victory over England. But in the Naval Battle of the Nile or 'Aboukir Bay', he was defeated by Admiral Nelson.

The Consulate:

A Directory government of five members ruled France from 1795 to 1799. Napoleon overthrew the Directory in 1799, by the Coup d'etat. A three member consulate government came into existence. The executive powers of consulate vested with three consuls, Napoleon was the First Consul, Abbe Sieyas and Ducos were the second and third consuls. The first consul had practically absolute powers. France remained a republic only in name. Napoleon declared himself as an Emperor by a

Plebiscite in 1804. He carried out a number of reforms both in domestic and foreign affairs, which have made his name immortal.

Reforms:

Most of the reforms of Napoleon Bonaparte were carried out during the consulate government. His administration led to the effective reconstruction of France. After 10 years of rapid and radical changes during French Revolution, France was experiencing a period of chaos and confusion. He was able to evolve order out of this chaos through administrative reforms.

Administrative reforms:

Napoleon centralized the entire system of local government in France. The whole country was divided into various Provinces or Departments. These were again sub divided into smaller units like Arrondissements and Communes. The powers of all the elected and other bodies were vested in Prefects and Sub-Prefects, who were responsible only to him.

The new system assured that the decrees of the central government should promptly and uniformly be carried out. An efficient police force and loyal army helped him to implement these ideas smoothly. He also developed the office of the 'Secretariat of the State', to a new level.

Code Napoleon:

The most appreciable reform of Napoleon was the introduction of the legal code. They still remain the base for French law. Napoleon himself later said that, his true glory was not having won 40 battles but having brought out the civil code.- The famous 'Code Napoleon' became almost a model for the rest of the Europe.

First he brought out a Civil Code which in turn was followed by the Code of Civil Procedure, the Code of Criminal Procedure, the Penal Code and the Commercial Code. The important

demands of the revolution like civil equality, religious toleration, emancipation of land, etc all were clearly connected with these codes. So Napoleon Bonaparte is called the 'Second Justinian'.

The Concordat: (Religious treaty)

It was the aim of Napoleon to heal up the wounds caused by the French Revolution by its breach with the Papacy. He felt that, a state without religion was like an empty vessel; so he decided to regain the sympathy of the Catholics by improving his relations with the Pope. After negotiations with Pope Pius VII, he reached a religious understanding with the pope in 1802, which came to be known as the 'Concordat'. With this treaty Catholicism became the state religion of France.

Education:

Napoleon introduced a national scheme of education. There were four grades of schools. All were managed by the state. These grades were elementary, secondary, higher and special schools. Special schools were technical schools, civil service schools or military schools etc. He introduced a new University system and in 1808 established the University of France. It was meant to maintain University standards and supervise the functioning of the schools. Two subjects taught commonly were Christian ethics and loyalty to the state.

Public works:

He also undertook a number of public works. This helped to solve the unemployment problem. Various magnificent highways including two Trans-Alpine roads which brought Paris in touch with Turin, Rome and other places were laid. Huge bridges were built, old canals and water ways were repaired and put to better use. New streets were constructed and Triangular Arches were built. An old prison was renovated and converted into museum called Louvre. Paris city was transformed from a medieval town to a beautiful and modern capital city.

Economic reforms:

In order to manage the financial position and the improvement of nation, Napoleon laid a foundation to the National Bank in 1805, which is called as 'Bank of France'. Apart from supervising the entire financial setup, it stimulated trade and industry. He tried to improve the financial condition of the country. Careful collection of taxes and rigid economic measures were also carried on. Revenue boards were setup. The national loan was reduced and the stock exchanges were regulated. He took stern measures to root out corruption and gambling.

Legion of honour:

To honour those who rendered meritorious military and civil services to the state Napoleon Bonaparte started an award called 'Legion of Honour'. It was based on principles of equality, without distinction of class and religion.

Napoleon's Conquests:

The First Coalition combining Prussia, Austria, Russia, Spain and others, which formed an opposition to the French Revolution, was shattered during the victorious campaign of Napoleon against Italy. Now his task was to meet the Second Coalition consisting of Russia, Austria, Turkey, Naples and England. Napoleon was able to win over Tsar of Russia to his side. Austria was defeated at Hohenzollern in 1801. Now England was left without a friend. Napoleon could not attack England because, France had no powerful fleet.

Battle of Trafalgar (1805):

In 1804, Napoleon crowned himself as 'Napoleon I- Emperor of France'. The ten years of the empire witnessed almost continuous warfare. England, Austria, Russia and Sweden were alarmed at the growth of the French power, formed an alliance (coalitions) against France. Two of the most famous battles fought during this time were the Battle of Trafalgar in 1805 (naval

battle, in which the French were defeated) and another war was the Battle of Austerlitz.

Battle of Austerlitz (1805):

Napoleon took the advantage of his army's superiority on land. He inflicted a crushing defeat over the combined forces of Austria and Russia in the Battle of Austerlitz in 1805, which brought them under his subordination. Now Napoleon concluded the Treaty of 'Tilsit' with the Tsar of Russia in 1807. He was at his zenith of power and the entire Europe was under his influence, except England, which remained his enemy.

Continental System (1806):-

England's strength was in its trade and commerce. Hence Napoleon decided to attack England by destroying it. He issued two decrees from Berlin in 1806 and Milan in 1807. Accordingly British goods were fully excluded from the whole of Europe. This was called the 'Continental System'. Since Europe was dependent on England, the application of this system harmed France more than England. The European nations suffered a lot, which depended on imports from England. As a result Spain and Portugal were attacked for not observing the Continental System. When there was a civil war in Spain Napoleon installed his brother Joseph on the Spanish throne against the wishes of its people. This resulted in a national revolution in Spain. England took advantage of the situation and sent its army under General Arthur Wellesley, who defeated the French army. Napoleon himself uttered at later stage as, "the Spanish Ulcer ruined me".

Russian campaign (1812):

The Tsar Alexander, ruler of Russia violated the continental system and began to import British goods. This was the main reason for the invasion of Moscow by Napoleon. He organized a huge army against Russia. Russians followed a policy of retreat. French army entered Moscow and Napoleon hoped that Tsar

would eventually surrender. Moscow was set on fire by Russians. But French army terribly suffered mainly from biting cold, hunger and thirst. Napoleon failed miserably and returned to France with a loss of 3,00,000 soldiers.

Battle of Leipzig (1813):

After the Russian Campaign Napoleon's enemies increased. The fourth coalition was formed. The combined armies of Austria and Prussia, with the help of England defeated Napoleon in the Battle of 'Leipzig' in 1813. Later he was arrested and deported to the Island of Elba. Then Louis XVIII was installed as king of France. But he escaped from Elba and reached France. On his arrival, Louis XVIII vacated French throne and took refuge in Belgium.

Battle of Waterloo (1815):

Napoleon fled back to France from Elba Island and ruled for 100 days. Allied nations came together and decided to defeat him. They completely defeated Napoleon in the Battle of Waterloo (Belgium) in 1815. Sir Arthur Wellesley (Wellington) was the then British General. Later Napoleon was exiled to St. Helena, an Island in the Atlantic Ocean. On May 5th, 1821 Napoleon died of Ulcer.

Causes for the downfall of Napoleon

- Though he was a genius, his inordinate ambition, pride and self - centered nature ruined him in the end.
- Napoleonic Empire depended only on his military strength. His army consisted soldiers belonging to different nationalities, who did not have any attachment to the Empire.
- The rise of nationalism against the Napoleonic Empire was another factor that led to his fall. This spirit of nationalism which initially worked well in Spain, later on spread to other countries like Austria, Prussia and Russia, leading to the war of Liberation.

- The continental system was one of the great blunders committed by Napoleon Bonaparte. Due to the heavy losses the European countries came out of the system.
- The Russian expedition was ill-fated and the grand army of Napoleon was reduced to pieces due to the bad weather. The opportunity was immediately seized by his enemies who formed a fourth coalition to bring about his downfall.
- The ill-treatment of the Pope by Napoleon antagonized the Roman Catholics throughout Europe. In 1809 he had seized the Papal territories and transferred the seat of Papacy to Paris as the Pope had refused to observe the continental system.
- The continued opposition of England, its undisputed supremacy on the sea and the ability of its commanders like Admiral Nelson and General Wellesley also contributed much towards the destruction of Napoleonic Empire. It is also to be noted that his navy was very weak.
- The friends and relatives of Napoleon, who enjoyed the favours when he was at the zenith of power, betrayed him in the end.



NAPOLEON'S TOMB

Napoleon's Tomb is located in the central crypt of the English du Dome Church in the city of Paris. The remains of the emperor, inside the sarcophagus are protected by six concentric coffins, built from different materials, including mahogany, ebony, and oak, all one inside the other.

On May 5th 1821, Napoleon died on the island of St. Helena, where he had been in exile since 1815. He was buried in the Geranium valley. His remains rested there until October 15th 1840.

In 1840 his remains were exhumed and brought to Paris, under the instructions of Louis Philippe. A state funeral was held, and the remains laid to rest in St. Jerome's Chapel. The remains were moved in 1861 when the tomb was completed.

The tomb is crafted in red porphyry, and placed on a green granite base, it is circled by a crown of laurels with inscriptions, which act as a reminder of the empire's great victories. In the round gallery is a series of low relief, sculptures by Simart. A statue of the emperor, bearing the imperial emblem, is located at the back of the crypt.

Questions

Answer in a word or sentence each (Each carries One mark)

1. Who was the first consul of France?
2. Who was Admiral Nelson?
3. In which year did Napoleon Bonaparte crown himself as the Emperor of France?
4. Who established the Bank of France?
5. Which University was founded by Napoleon Bonaparte?
6. Who imposed the continental system?
7. Where did Napoleon Bonaparte die?
8. Which was the last battle of Napoleon Bonaparte?
9. Who is called as the second Justinian?
10. In which year was the Battle of Waterloo fought?

Answer in two or three sentences each (each carries two marks)

1. Name the parents of Napoleon Bonaparte.
2. Where and in which year was Napoleon Bonaparte born?
3. Between whom and when was 'Tilsit Treaty' concluded ?
4. What is Concordat?
5. What is Continental system?
6. What is Legion of Honour?

Answer in 15-20 lines each (each carries five marks)

1. Write about the life and rise of Napoleon Bonaparte.
2. Write about the military expeditions of Napoleon Bonaparte.
3. Discuss the continental system of Napoleon Bonaparte
4. Explain the causes for the decline of Napoleon Bonaparte.
5. Napoleon Bonaparte was "The Child of Revolution "and "the Destroyer of Revolution". - Justify this statement.

Answer in 30-40 lines each(Each carries ten marks questions)

1. Describe the administrative reforms of Napoleon Bonaparte.
2. Write about rise and conquests of Napoleon Bonaparte.



9.2 Unification Of Italy

Birth of Spirit of Nationalism - The role of Mazzini, Cavour, Garibaldi and Victor Emmanuel II.

The French Revolution and the Napoleonic era aroused nationalism among European countries. Though attempts were made by some people to suppress the tide of nationalism, they could not succeed. The triumph of nationalism could be seen in the unification of Italy and Germany.

Before the 19th century, Italy was only a 'geographical expression.' There were a number of states jealous of each other. There was no unity among them. Hence they became victims of foreign domination. The northern states of Lombardy and Venetia were directly under the Austrians, other small states were under the Hapsburgs, Parma, Modena and Tuscany were under the Austrian Royal family, Central Italian Duchies were ruled by the pope. Naples and Sicily in the South were under the Bourbons of France.

Napoleon remarked; Italy is surrounded by Alps and the sea Her national limits are defined. Italy is one nation in Unity.

When Napoleon brought Italy under his control, the Italians welcomed him. The French revolution had its impact on the



Italy before unification

people of Italy. They considered Napoleon as the representative of French revolutionary principles. His authority on the Italian states proved to be beneficial. The Italians enjoyed unity. He brought about reforms and passed enlightened laws. The gospel of French revolution, 'Liberty, Equality and Fraternity', had its effect on the Italians.

After the fall of Napoleon, the Congress of Vienna, which was dominated by Metternich, the prime minister of Austria undid his work. Italy was divided again. Lombardy and Venetia were given to Austria Parma, Modena and Tuscany came under the Austrian Hapsburgs, the Pope was restored in Rome and was given Papal States of Romagna and Bologna. The Bourbons were given Naples and Sicily. Sardinia and Genoa were added to the kingdom of Piedmont which was the only state ruled by an Italian king. Thus the unity was thwarted.

Congress of Vienna: After the fall of Napoleon in 1815, the European Powers met at Vienna, the capital of Austria to redraw the map of Europe. Metternich, the Austrian Prime Minister played a dominant role in the Congress of Vienna. The period between 1815 and 1850 is called as "the age of Metternich." He acted as the restorer of the old regime and was against all liberal movements and suppressed them.

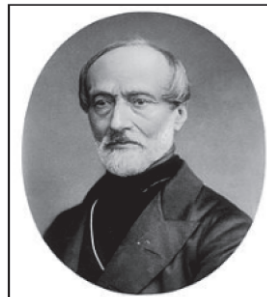
But the people of Italy never forgot the lesson that Italy was a Nation. They had enjoyed temporary union, equal rights before the law, religious liberty, freedom of press and self government.

By 1820, insurrections began. These insurrections were the work of secret societies. The largest of these was the 'Carbonari' or 'Charcoal burners.' They were active in creating opposition to foreign rule. There were many revolts between 1820–1831. But the revolts were put down by Austria.

The revolutions of 1830 and 1848 in France also had their effects on Italians, which led to further rebellions. All these were put down by Austria and France. Finally Joseph Mazzini, Count Cavour, Garibaldi and Victor Emmanuel helped in realizing the dream of Italian Unification.

Joseph Mazzini (1805-1872)

Joseph Mazzini, called the 'Soul of Italian Unification' was born at Genoa in 1805. He was a lawyer by Profession, He believed that 'Pen is mightier than Sword' and decided to infuse patriotism among the people through his articles. He was a member of the Carbonari. He founded a society called 'Young Italy' in 1831.



It was an organization of the Youth and a secret and underground organization. He felt that unification has to be achieved only by Italians. Men below 40 years of age were given membership to this society. They were able bodied Youths of Italy. The unity of Italy was preached as a new religion and a holy mission. 'God, the people and Italy' were the watchwords of this organization. Because of his activities, he was banished and lived in exile in France, Switzerland and England and guided the movement from outside.

Mazzini's influence was such that in 1848, well organized revolts were seen in Italy. People of Lombardy, Parma, Modena and Tuscany rose in revolt against their rulers. Since there was no unity among them, they were easily put down by Austria and France. Charles Albert, the king of Italy led the national movement and drove out Austria from Lombardy. But this success was short lived. The Austrians defeated the Sardinian army. Disappointed with this, Charles Albert abdicated his throne in favour of his son Victor Emmanuel II.

Count De-Cavour (1810-1861)

Born in 1810 at Piedmont, Cavour received military education. He served the military for some time. He studied the history and culture of Italy and developed a patriotic spirit. He advocated English Constitutional System. In 1847, he started a newspaper called

'Risorgimento' (Rebirth). As the editor of the paper, he mobilized public opinion to unite Italy.

His political career began when he was elected to the Parliament of Piedmont in 1850. He was appointed as the Prime Minister in 1852 by Victor Emmanuel II. He served as the Prime Minister from 1852 to 1861. He had the dream of uniting Italy under the leadership of Sardinia. But before taking up that task, he undertook many reforms to make Sardinia strong. Economy was reformed. Commercial taxes were reduced. He encouraged education and industries. He thus developed the state and it became a 'Model State'.

He believed in the policy of war and diplomacy to unite Italy. Cavour believed that Italian Unification could be achieved only with the help of other European Countries. Hence, he took part in the Crimean War. This war, fought between 1854-1856, with England and France on the side of Turkey against Russia had no reason for Cavour to take part. But with a foresight to create an image about his State before England and France, he made this move. He remarked 'Out of the mud of Crimea Italy will be made'. After the war, in the Paris Peace Congress, he put forth the problems of Italy before the leaders.

Napoleon I - Napoleon Bonaparte called himself Napoleon I, the Emperor of France after he was crowned in 1804.

Napoleon II (1811-1832) - Was the son of Napoleon I. In 1814, when his father declared him as the Emperor, the coalition parties refused to acknowledge. He never ruled France.

Napoleon III - was the nephew of Napoleon I. He ascended the throne in 1852. He ruled as Emperor of France till 1870.

Napoleon III, the ruler of France was very sympathetic to the cause of Italian Unification. Cavour signed an agreement

with Napoleon III at Plombieres in 1858. Napoleon promised to help Cavour against Austria in return for which Cavour had to give Savoy and Nice. Cavour built his army. Austria was suspicious of the meeting between Cavour and Napoleon and the militarization of Sardinia and ordered Sardinia to disarm. When Sardinia refused, the war began in 1859. This war lasted for two months. The Austrians were defeated at Magenta and Salfereno. But Napoleon stopped the war without giving a clue to Sardinia, concluded the treaty of 'Villa Franca' with Austria. According to this treaty, Austrian troops were evacuated from Lombardy and it was ceded to Victor Emmanuel II. Thus, the first stage of unification was set in. Napoleon received Nice and Savoy. The abrupt end of the war disappointed Cavour. He forced King Victor Emmanuel II not to accept the treaty of Villa Franca. But when Victor Emmanuel refused, he resigned. But soon he was re-elected and took over as the Prime Minister. In 1860 Modena, Parma, Tuscany, Romagna, Umbria and Marches voted to merge with Sardinia. This led to the second step in the unification. Considered 'the Brain of Italian Unification', he died in 1861. He died almost a decade before the Unification of Italy. His last words were "Italy is made, all is safe". It was indeed an optimistic quote.

Treaty of Villa Franca- 1859- concluded between France and Austria - Austria was to cede Lombardy to France, which France had to transfer to Piedmont. Venetia was to be under Austria. The rulers of Central Italy were to be brought back.

Garibaldi (1807-1882)



The third stage of Italian Unification was achieved by a great patriot, Garibaldi. He was born in 1807 at Nice. He became a member of 'Young Italy' at the age of 24 and took part in the revolutionary activities

He participated in a revolt organized by Mazzini at Savoy in 1834. But the revolt failed.

Because of his nationalistic activities he was given death sentence. He managed to escape to South America and lived in exile for 14 years. He got a large number of followers prepared for any sacrifice for the sake of their country. They were transformed into an army called 'Red Shirts'. During the 1848 revolution, he returned to Italy and took part in Italian Nationalist Movement. During the war between Sardinia and Austria, he commanded the Sardinian Forces.

In 1860, the people of Sicily sought his help against the Bourbons. Immediately he went with his army of Red Shirts and within two months Francis II was defeated and Sicily was annexed. Then he went to Naples and defeated Francis II here also. From here he wanted to go to Rome. But Cavour did not like his move and prevailed upon Victor Emmanuel II to prevent him. So an army of Victor Emmanuel II was sent to Rome. Garibaldi, whose main aim was the Unification of Italy, handed over Naples and Sicily to Victor Emmanuel II. Garibaldi, is called the 'Sword of Italian Unification'. A true patriot, he refused to accept titles and honours which were offered to him, went back to his village and lived the life of a peasant.

Victor Emmanuel II



Victor Emmanuel II, the King of Sardinia was a patriot himself and an honest king of Italy. He achieved the unification through peaceful negotiations. He appointed Count Cavour as his Prime Minister. By 1861, Cavour united most of Italy. On 18th February 1861, a new Parliament was convened at Turin and Victor Emmanuel II was proclaimed as the King of Italy. But Venetia and Rome were yet to be added.

Venetia was under Austria and Rome was under the Pope.

In 1866, a war broke out between Austria and Prussia, in which Victor Emmanuel sided with Prussia. The victory of Prussia over Austria compelled Austria to give Venetia to Italy.

In 1870, when there was a war between Prussia and France, Napoleon III withdrew his forces from Rome which had been kept for the protection of the Pope. Immediately, Victor Emmanuel's troops occupied Rome. The Unification of Italy was completed in 1870. Rome became the capital of unified Italy.

Thus, the Patriotism of Mazzini, the Wars of Garibaldi, the Diplomacy of Cavour and the Statesmanship of Victor Emmanuel helped the Unification of Italy.



Italy after Unification

Questions

Answer in a word or a sentence (each carries 1 Mark)

1. What is Carbonari?
2. Who founded Young Italy?
3. Who said 'Pen is mightier than Sword'?

4. Who published the paper 'Resorgimento'?
5. Who helped Sardinia and Piedmont in her war against Austria?
6. Which treaty was concluded after the war between Austria and Sardinia?
7. Who established the Red Shirt Army?
8. Who was the first King of United Italy?
9. Name the capital of United Italy.

Answer in 2 words or 2 sentences (each carries 2 Marks)

1. Name the architects of Italian Unification.
2. What were the aims of Young Italy?
3. Who was called the Sword of Italian Unification? Name the army he established.
4. Name any 4 States of Italy.
5. Who was the Chancellor of Victor Emmanuel II? What was his policy?

Answer in 15 to 20 sentences (each carries 5 Marks)

1. Trace the role of Joseph Mazzini in the Unification of Italy.
2. Describe the role of Count Cavour in the Unification of Italy.
3. Write about the part played by Garibaldi in the Italian Unification.

Answer in 30 to 40 sentences (each carries 10 Marks)

1. Describe the stages of Italian Unification.
2. Describe the part played by Mazzini, Cavour and Garibaldi in the Italian Unification.



9.3 Unification of Germany

Introduction

The German territory was divided into more than 300 petty states before the Unification. These states were ruled by inefficient autocrats. They were dominated by England, Denmark and Sweden. The German people had a common language and culture, which infused the desire of Unification. Napoleon Bonaparte conquered the German states and reduced the number of states to 39, creating larger states. He provided a good system of administration. The states became stronger compared to earlier times. The Vienna Congress was constituted in 1815 after the fall of Napoleon Bonaparte. It was entrusted with the work of redrawing the European map, which had been shattered by Napoleon's conquests.

The people of the German states hoped that the Congress would heed to the popular demand and unite the German states. The hope turned into disappointment, as the Congress retained the existing 39 German states as the '**Confederation of Rhine**', but now under the domination of Austria. Austria followed a reactionary policy towards Germany and suppressed all attempts of unification to retain its hold on the German states. It imposed censorship on the Press and Private correspondence, Restrictions on free speech, surveillance of colleges and Universities, prohibition on nationalistic discussions, etc.

Zollverein

Prussia was the strongest and largest among the 39 states of the Confederation of Rhine. It worked for an economic union of the German States. The Customs Union called 'Zollverein' was formed in 1834. Zollverein allowed 'free trade', reduced the protectionist barriers and improved the transportation of raw

materials and finished goods among the German states. The products were now less costly to buy or sell. Despite Austrian opposition all the German states joined the Zollverein. This economic unity was the first step towards the political unity at a later stage.

Frankfurt Parliament (1848)

Many European nations including German states witnessed revolutions in 1848. The revolutions in German states aimed at unification and a single German constitution. The revolutionaries hoped that such a constitution would provide a universal male suffrage, a permanent national parliament and a United Germany under the leadership of Prussian King.

The Frankfurt parliament consisting of the representatives of all the German states met on 27th march 1849. It held discussions, passed the resolution and offered the title 'Kaiser' (Emperor) to the Prussian king, Fredrick William IV. He refused the offer to become the emperor of United Germany stating that he could not accept the crown offered by the elected representatives of the states, instead of their Kings. Moreover, he was afraid of the military intervention of Austria and Russia. Thus the attempt of the unification failed.

Bismarck (1815-1898)



Otto Von Bismarck

Edward Leopold Otto Van Bismarck was born in 1815 in an aristocratic family of Prussia. He was well educated and he travelled widely in Europe, particularly, in France and England. He was appointed as the Prussian Ambassador to Russia and later to France. Thus he gained first-hand knowledge and experience about the European politics. He was appointed as Chancellor (P.M) of Prussia in 1862 by King William I. Bismarck had made up his mind to unify Germany

under the monarchy of Prussia. He believed that Prussia alone had the ability to lead the German states. He also knew that Austria was to be defeated to achieve the goal. So Bismarck began to re-organize the Prussian military with the help of General Roon and General Moltke. Very soon the Prussian army was among the best in Europe. He said, "The great questions of the time will not be resolved by speeches and majority decisions.... but by Iron and blood". This became popular as '**Blood and Iron**' policy of Bismarck.

War with Denmark (1864)

The King of Denmark was also the Duke of the German provinces of Schleswig and Holstein. The new King, Christian IX declared the provinces to be a part of Denmark. The people of the provinces (majority German) and other German States



(From left to right)
Bismarck, Roon
and Moltke

were unhappy at this move. Bismarck made an alliance with Austria to capture the two German provinces. Denmark was attacked in 1864 by the combined armies of Prussia and Austria. Denmark expected the support of a few German states which did not materialize and was defeated. The peace **treaty of**

Vienna was signed in October 1864. Later on Prussia and Austria agreed to respectively administer Schleswig and Holstein according to the Convention of Gastein.

Austro-Prussian War (1866)

Bismarck promised compensation to Napoleon III, the Emperor of France for the French neutrality, in case of a war with Austria. Prussia and Italy also came to a secret understanding- to militarily help each other, if Austria attacked either of them. After this, Prussia proposed a plan for a National Constitution and a National Diet for the German States. The representatives to the Diet were to be elected through Universal Suffrage. Many of the German States were initially reluctant to the proposal. Prussia and Italy started troop movements near the Austrian borders. Austria responded by full scale mobilization of troops. The border incidents arranged by Bismarck made Austria declare war on Prussia and it appeared that Austria was the aggressor. It also resulted in the reluctant German States joining the Prussian side, because of German Nationalistic Sentiments. The well prepared Prussian army, with the support of Italy and many German States registered quick victories in the battles. The decisive battle was fought at **Koniggratz** near **Sadowa**, in which Austria was completely defeated. This war is also called as '**Seven Weeks War**'.

The Austro-Prussian war of 1866 ended with the **treaty of Prague**. According to this treaty Schleswig and Holstein were

annexed by Prussia. Venice was ceded to Italy. Austria agreed to give up the supervision of the German States. The **North German Confederation** was formed under the leadership of the Prussian King. This resulted in a partial Unification of Germany. Only a few South German States remained out of Unification.

Franco-Prussian War (1870-71)

Bismarck did not keep up the promise of compensation to France for its neutrality. He desired a war with France to complete his scheme of Unification. He knew that a war with France would make the remaining German States join the North German Confederation. The French were also angry at Prussia, as they believed that it was actually France that was beaten in the battle of Sadowa. The balance of power which existed in Europe was shattered due to the Austrian defeat. So France too wanted a war with Prussia.

The dispute for the Spanish throne offered a pretext for war. Bismarck supported the claims of Prince Leopold, a relative of the Prussian King. The French were alarmed at the growth of the Prussian power. The French opposed the claims and were successful in pressurizing Leopold to decline the offer. The French wanted a reassurance from the Prussian King that he would not support any claimant of his choice for the Spanish throne. The Prussian King politely refused to meet the French

ambassador on the issue, as Prussian supported claimant had already declined the offer. Bismarck again caused a diplomatic issue by presenting the situation as, the Prussian King had insulted France by not receiving the French ambassador.

Napoleon III declared war on Prussia. Bismarck diplomatically isolated France in the war and none of the European Nations came to the support of France. The South German States, which had remained out of the North German Confederation, joined Prussia against France. The Prussian forces inflicted crushing defeats at different places. The **Battle of Sedan** fought on 1st September **1870** was the final blow to the French. They were defeated here and also the French Emperor, Napoleon III was captured. Germans captured Paris. The Prussian King William was crowned as the Emperor of united Germany with the title 'Kaiser" at Versailles.

The **Treaty of Frankfurt** ended the war on 10th May **1871**. According to the treaty, France had to cede Alsace and a part of Lorraine, had to pay a war indemnity of 200,000,000 dollars and the German forces would stay on the French soil until the indemnity was paid.

The Unification of Germany was completed under the Prussian King. Germany now dominated the European politics and Bismarck became a powerful personality and the '**Architect of German Unification**'. The French were humiliated. Their National Pride was hurt and they sought revenge. This served as one of the causes for the First World War.

Questions

Answer in a word or a sentence each. (Each carries 1 mark)

- 1) What was the famous policy of Bismarck?
- 2) In which year did Prussia attack Denmark?
- 3) Which King of Denmark declared the annexation of Schleswig and Holstein?
- 4) Which treaty ended the Austro-Prussian War?
- 5) Which treaty ended the Franco-Prussian War?

Answer in two words or two sentences each. (Each carries 2 marks)

- 1) What was Zollverein?
- 2) Why did Fredrick William IV reject the offer of the Frankfurt Parliament?

- 3) Who assisted Bismarck in the re-organization of the Prussian military?

Answer in 15-20 sentences. (5 marks)

- 1) Discuss the role of Bismarck in the Unification of Germany.

Answer in 30-40 sentences. (10 marks)

- 1) Discuss in detail the different stages of the German Unification.



CHAPTER 10

WORLD WARS – INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS

Background:

The two World Wars had a complex geographical, political, cultural and intellectual background. The geographical discoveries of the 15th and 16th centuries made a deep impact on the economic and political conditions of Europe and other parts of the world. Mainly these discoveries opened up new sea and land routes to different countries of the world, which inculcated stronger trade relationships and free movement among the countries. As an outcome of this, there started a keen contest among the European powers for colonial wealth and possessions.

The Renaissance marked the beginning of modern thinking and development of science, secularism, etc. The new political ideologies like democracy, secularism, socialism, communism, etc. began to gain popularity across the countries of the world.

Similarly the Reformation movement weakened the authority of religion over the state. The Papacy slowly lost its hold over the state. Monarchy, the ideas of nationalism and democracy were strengthened. The people began to enjoy more intellectual freedom, which resulted in the rapid progress in the field of science and other intellectual areas.

The American War of Independence and the French Revolution too prepared the background for the World Wars in its own way. These revolutions upheld and popularized the principles of nationalism and democracy. The revolutionary spirit spread to other countries of Europe. The Napoleonic Era awakened the spirit of Nationalism. The people gave their first loyalty to their nation. This spirit of nationalism led to many wars resulting in national unity. It also led to the creation of many new countries like Italy and Germany between 1815 and 1914. At the same time, as a result of the Reformation Movement and scientific progress, the people of Europe advanced and modernized rapidly. The wealth of Europe had increased enormously as a result of the Industrial Revolution. They were also successful in establishing colonies in different parts of the world. But they had not yet learnt the art of settling their territorial and other disputes with neighbouring states peacefully. As a result, the peace of the world was disturbed and the first half of the Twentieth century witnessed two major wars, in which several countries from Europe and other parts of the world participated. The wars caused great devastation and loss of life on a scale which was unprecedented in human history. These are known as First and Second World Wars.

10.1 The First World War [1914 – 1918]



First World War

The First World War was one of the greatest, largest and most destructive events in the history of modern world. It was the first war, in which such a large number of countries from Europe and other parts of the world were involved and

affected either directly or indirectly. It destroyed more human life and material than any other previous wars. The First World War broke out in 1914 and came to an end in 1918. It primarily started in Europe and soon it spread to many parts of the world. It was the first conflict between the highly organized and well armed countries of the Twentieth century. Hence, it was called the 'World War'. Nearly thirty countries participated in the war.

Causes:

1. Aggressive Nationalism:

Prior to the outbreak of the First World War aggressive Nationalism had assumed dangerous proportions. Nationalistic aspirations led to political rivalries. On the eve of the war, Europe developed aggressive nationalism. It meant love of one's country and hatred towards the other countries. The spirit of nationalism had created a number of new states in Europe in the 19th century. Thus, patriotism took a militant turn and 'my country, right or wrong', became the guiding principle of nationalists. It was this nationalism that made France to recover Alsace and Lorraine provinces and Serbia to recover Bosnia and Herzegovina. Even Russia also desired to extend southward. It was this competitive patriotism which led to rivalry between Britain and Germany, and they were forced to jump into military and naval competition. Kaiser William II [1888-1918], the Emperor of Germany believed in the superiority of German race. He wanted to make Germany a first rate power in the world. He believed in the policy of 'World Power or downfall'. His policy of colonial expansion became a threat to other colonial empires of the European countries. This aggressive nationalism was an important factor for the outbreak of the First World War.

2. Military Alliances:

After the Unification of Germany in 1871, its Chancellor Otto Von Bismarck desired peace. Germany considered France as its greatest enemy and Bismarck tried to isolate France diplomatically. So, Bismarck became active in forming alliances to strengthen Germany and isolate France. He initially formed an alliance with Austria which resulted in two rival alliances being formed – The Triple Alliance and Triple Entente. The Triple Alliance was formed by Germany consisting Germany, Austria and Italy. These powers were also known as the Central Powers. The Triple Entente emerged in 1907, out of the fear for Germany consisting of France, Russia, and England. They were known as the Allies. Each camp looked upon the other with jealousy and suspicion. Formation of these groups created a tense situation.

3. Arms Race:

The arms race was another major cause. The formation of two rival camps viz., Triple Alliance and Triple Entente led to a keen competition in manufacturing of war materials among the European nations. Each nation began to increase its military and naval armaments. Germany made tremendous



First World War-Tanks

progress in the military to produce modern weapons like tanks, submarines, etc. The warlike attitude of Kaiser William II of Germany greatly alarmed England. So, England began to strengthen its naval force. Nations like France, Russia and others who were afraid of Germany began to strengthen

their military power. France introduced compulsory military training. Russia doubled its military budget. This arms race created fear, suspicion, tension and distrust between one another.

4. Imperialism and Economic Rivalry:

The most important source of international conflict was Imperialism and Economic Rivalry among the European nations. Imperialism was a product of Industrial Revolution. It refers to the policy of extending a country's power by acquiring colonies. So, the colonial ambitions of the nations of Europe also led to the war. The colonies served as source for raw materials and markets for their

Imperialism in general refers to expanding one's empire and adding new territories to one's domain.

Colonialism means establishing political control over foreign countries by military or some other means, to achieve political, economic and market advantages.

finished products. The main commercial and industrial rivalry existed between Germany and England. England had more colonies. Germany tried to capture markets which were in the hands of England which led to bitterness between the two countries. German products were in great demand in many countries. England was afraid of losing its markets. England was not ready to give up any of her colonies but Germany wanted them at any cost. It was evident in Africa. In Africa, when Germany met the opposition of England and other European countries, it did not hesitate to use force to acquire the colonies. Thus Imperialism and Economic Rivalry became one of the causes for the First World War.

5. The Balkan Problems:

The weak and incompetent Sultan of Turkey was referred to, as the 'Sick Man of Europe'. The hold of Sultan on the Christian states like Bulgaria, Bosnia, Rumania, etc in the Balkan area was weakening. Taking advantage of his weakness, Austria and Russia were trying to spread their influence over the Balkan Peninsula. In 1908, Austria annexed the Balkan states of Bosnia and Herzegovina by violating the Berlin Treaty of 1878. The Berlin Treaty allowed Austria only to supervise but not to annex them. The action of Austria angered Russia and it backed Serbia against Austria. Thus the hostility ran very high between the two rival groups and led to the outbreak of the great war of 1914.

6. Role of the Newspapers:-

The Newspapers played an important role in widening the gap between the two rival camps. The newspapers in all the countries took up some point of dispute and tried to inflame the nationalist feelings. Newspapers were responsible in creating mistrust between the people of European nations.

7. Immediate Cause:

The immediate cause for the First World War was the murder of Crown Prince of Austria, Archduke Francis Ferdinand and his wife in the Bosnian capital, Sarajevo on 28th June, 1914. Gavrillo Princep, a student, who shot him was a Serbian. Austria sent an ultimatum to Serbia to arrest and handover the criminals. Serbia rejected the ultimatum. So, Austria, backed by Germany, declared war on Serbia on 28th July, 1914. Russia came to the help of Serbia, and thus started the First World War.

Course:

When Austria declared war on Serbia, Russia supported Serbia. Germany came to the aid of Austria. This brought other countries into the war.

In the war, Germany, Austria, Turkey and Bulgaria were on one side against Serbia, Russia, France, England, Belgium, Portugal, etc. which formed the opposite camp. In 1915, Italy deserted the Triple Alliance, and declared its support to the Allies. Russia suffered severe losses in 1915, but England



Biplanes of the First World War

continued to dominate the war with its naval supremacy. Germany was also powerful on the seas. It had a large number of submarines or U-Boats and inflicted much damage to the enemies. In 1917, U.S.A. also joined the side of Allies, because Germany destroyed the Lusitanian ship of England, in which many Americans were travelling. Soon this war turned into a global war. The scene now changed and the Allies went on winning the battles.

Meanwhile, an internal revolution broke out in Russia in 1917. The Communist government, which came to power under Lenin withdrew Russia from the war. The war was waged on land, sea and for the first time in the air too. The modern weapons like tanks, bombs and submarines were used in this war. Austrian army was destroyed in Italy. Thereafter Turkey and Bulgaria were also defeated and they surrendered to the Allied Powers. Ultimately, Germany and its allies were defeated on 11th November 1918. Kaiser William II, Emperor of Germany fled to Holland. Thus, the First World War came to an end.

Activity: Collect various photographs of scenes of the First World War.

Results:

1. The horrors and miseries of the war were plenty. The lasting result of the war was the loss of millions of fittest men and permanent disabling of many more. It has been estimated that about 60 million soldiers took part in the war. Out of them, about 10 million were killed and about 20 million were wounded. Most of them were men below the age of 40. Besides, millions of civilians died of starvation, disease and violence. As a result, women were forced to work in the factories, shops, hospitals, offices, schools, etc. They worked in place of men and thus ended the traditional barrier between men and women.
2. As a result of the war, four old empires were overthrown. They were the Hapsburg of Austria, Hohenzollerns of Germany, Ramanovs of Russia and the Turkish Sultanate [Ottoman Empire]. Many new states were set up on the ruins of old empires viz., Finland, Latvia, Estonia, Poland, Czechoslovakia and Yugoslavia.
3. The Treaty of Versailles was an important outcome of the war. By this Treaty Germany had to give up large number of its territories and colonies. It was imposed a huge war indemnity and its military strength was reduced.
4. It became common after the war to look to government for guidance to solve economic, social and other problems of the people. Government control over many aspects of life increased. Acute shortage of goods led to inflation. Each warring nation imposed heavy taxes to meet the war expenses. World's production decreased and the cost of living shot up everywhere. The largest European creditor- nations became debtor- nations.
5. The most important constructive result of the First World War was the establishment of an international organization

called the League of Nations to preserve the world peace by avoiding future wars. The Paris Peace Conference accepted the proposal of Woodrow Wilson. The League of Nations came into existence in 1920 with its headquarters at Geneva in Switzerland.

6. Countries like Poland, Belgium and Czechoslovakia became independent after the war.
7. The Paris Peace Conference, 1919 officially ended the First World War.

Treaty of Versailles, 1919:

After the First World War the Allied Powers met at Paris for the first time to arrange the terms of Peace. In the Paris Peace Conference the victorious Allies dictated the peace treaties. The main participants in the conference were Woodrow Wilson, the President of America, Lloyd George, the Prime Minister of England, Clemenceau, the Prime Minister of France and Orlando, the Prime Minister of Italy. Five separate treaties were signed by the Allied countries with Germany, Austria, Hungary, Turkey and Bulgaria. Of them, the most important was the Treaty of Versailles signed between the Allies and Germany on 28th June, 1919. The date was the fifth anniversary of the murder of Archduke, Francis Ferdinand of Austria. The Allied Powers strongly held Germany responsible for the destruction and suffering caused by the war. Germany was forced to sign the Treaty. It was humiliated and hurt by this Treaty.

Provisions of the Treaty:

1. Alsace and Lorraine provinces of Germany were given back to France. France also acquired the Saar coal basin of

Germany for a period of 15 years as a compensation for the destruction of the coal mines in the north of France.

2. Schleswig and Holstein were given to Denmark by Germany. Danzig was snatched away from Germany and declared a free port.
3. Rhineland area was completely demilitarized. All existing forts in the area were demolished and instructions were given not to build any more forts.
4. The independence of Poland, Belgium and Czechoslovakia was recognized by Germany.
5. Germany gave up all its colonies to the Allies. These were divided among themselves by England, France, Japan and others.
6. Germany was made responsible for the losses of First World War. So, Germany was made to pay a huge war indemnity of 6,600 million Pounds.
7. Germany was disarmed. The sizes of its army and navy were reduced. German army was cut down to 100,000 soldiers. The import and export of weapons were prohibited. It also imposed restriction on the manufacture of machine guns and rifles. The German warships were converted into commercial ships. It was not allowed to maintain Tanks, Submarines and Military aircrafts.

Criticisms of the Treaty of Versailles:

The Treaty of Versailles was severely criticized. It was not based on the principle of justice but on the spirit of revenge. So, the Treaty created several new problems. It hurt the feelings of the Germans. This led to ill feeling between Germany and the Allies. The Treaty sowed the seeds for the future wars. Further, that did not come up to the expectations of the peace loving people of the different nations of the world. The Allied powers should have treated Germany more sympathetically because it hurt self pride of the nation.

The other great weakness was that the Treaty was dictated and not negotiated peace. The Germans were simply instructed to sign the Treaty. So, it generated a spirit of revenge in the minds of Germans.

THE LEAGUE OF NATIONS

The sufferings and miseries of the First World War forced most of the nations to think of an international organization. The President of U.S.A., Woodrow Wilson proposed the formation of the League of Nations to bring about international co-operation, peace and security. As a result, the League of Nations was established on 1st January 1920. Its headquarters was situated at **Geneva** in Switzerland. At first it had only 42 member nations and later the number rose to 63.

The most important aim of the League was to achieve international peace and security and international co-operation. It was also to work for the human welfare and peaceful settlement of disputes. It was to make the strong nations to give up warfare and reduce their armaments.

Organization: The League Nations had three principal organs –

The Assembly: The Assembly was the supreme body of the League. It consisted of representatives of all the member nations. It was to meet at Geneva in Switzerland once a year. Every member nation could send three representatives and had only one vote.

The Council: The council of the League was a small but powerful body. At first it included only five permanent members namely, U.S.A., U.K., France, Italy and Japan and four non-permanent members. Later, Russia and Germany were given permanent seats in the Council. The Council met thrice a year.

The Secretariat: The League also consisted of Secretariat under the Secretary-General. There were about seven hundred officials to perform the administrative works. The first Secretary-General of the League was Sir James Eric Drummond of Britain.

Auxiliary Organs: The most important auxiliary organs are **Permanent Court of International Justice**, the **International Labour Office** and the **Mandates Commission**. The permanent Court of International Justice consisted of 15 Judges and its headquarters was at The Hague in Holland. Its main function was to settle international disputes. The International Labour Office aimed to improve the labour condition throughout the world. The Mandates Commission was to supervise the colonial territories taken from the defeated countries in the First World War.

The League of Nations did much useful work in the political and other fields. But, later on, it could not work with the same spirit and failed in its objectives. As a result, the Second World War broke out in 1939 and the League proved ineffective and remained paralyzed. Hence, it met its death on April 19th, 1946, when the League of Nations was officially closed.

10.2 Rise of Dictatorships

The twenty years between the two World Wars were the years of disorder and confusion in Europe. The First World War created very difficult political as well as economic problems. An outcome of the above situation was the rise of dictatorships in Italy, Germany, Russia, etc. Democracy faced a danger from political concepts like Fascism in Italy and Nazism in Germany.

Fascism in Italy:

Italy came out of the First World War as a disappointed victor because it received much less than what it expected at the Paris Peace Settlement in 1919. Therefore, the Italian patriots complained that they lost the peace although they won the war. After the war Italy faced many problems that were social, economic and political. The country faced bankruptcy, starvation, unemployment and general lawlessness. Strikes and lockouts of the industrial workers and riots and uprising of the hungry mobs became the order of the day. The common man struggled for peace and bread. Prices rose rapidly. Under such circumstances the Fascist Party was founded by Benito Mussolini. The term 'Fascism' has been derived from the word 'fasces' which means 'bundle of rods' with an axe – symbol of power in the ancient Roman period.

Early Life:

Benito Mussolini was born in Italy in 1883. His father Alessandro Mussolini was a blacksmith and mother, Rosa was a school teacher. He worked as a teacher and journalist. Later, he edited a Socialist paper, 'Avanti'. After the First World War he formed the Fascist Party at Milan in 1919. Its members wore black shirts and hence the Fascists were called 'Black Shirts'. They were patriotic, anti-communists and stood for nationalism. 'Believe, obey and fight' were the watchwords of his party. Armed with guns and clubs, the Fascists broke



Benito Mussolini
(1883-1945)

communist and socialist meetings. They also put down trade unions and peasant organizations. In 1922, Mussolini and his followers marched to Rome, and occupied government offices, Railways, Post and Telegraph, etc. King Victor Emmanuel III, who was afraid of a civil war, asked Mussolini to form the government. Immediately, he started the Fascist rule in Italy. He suppressed all the opposition and became a dictator.

Fascism stood for the following principles –

1. Glorification of war
2. Importance to the state
3. Belief in Single party
4. Opposition to democracy and socialism
- 5 . Unquestioning supremacy of the regime

Achievements of Mussolini:

Mussolini restored order, and industrial strikes were totally banned. Communists were mercilessly massacred. Education was brought under the state control to spread fascist ideas. Mussolini realized the importance of securing the support of Church for his regime. So, he made peace with Pope Pius XI by signing the 'Lateran Treaty' in 1929. The Pope recognized the kingdom of Italy, and in return Mussolini recognized the independence of the Vatican. Through Fascism, Mussolini enforced order and discipline. He encouraged the production of electricity, and used natural resources for the increase in foreign trade. He improved agriculture, and developed the Italian industry. Trade and commerce were revived. Construction of railways and ship-building were given top priority. Militarism was the main feature of the Fascist Party. Compulsory military training was introduced. The army, navy and air force were strengthened. Further, in order to increase the population,

Italian parents with large families were rewarded with incentives like tax exemption, employment, etc.

Foreign Policy:

After consolidating his position at home, Mussolini turned his attention towards the expansion of Italy. To achieve this, he followed a vigorous and aggressive foreign policy. Mussolini was over ambitious. He publicly declared, 'Italy must expand or perish'. To achieve the goal, he conquered Abyssinia (Ethiopia) in 1935 against the threat of League of Nations. Now, fearing the involvement of Britain and France, Mussolini turned towards Germany of Hitler. In October 1936, Italy and Germany formed an alliance called Rome-Berlin Axis. In November 1936, Germany entered into a pact with Japan called the Anti-Comintern Pact against Russia. In 1937, Japan joined the axis and thus it became the **'ROME – BERLIN – TOKYO Axis'**.

When the Second World War broke out, Mussolini fought along with Germany against the Allies. The Allies captured the Italian colonies in North Africa. They then invaded the main land of Italy in 1943. Ultimately, Benito Mussolini was captured and shot down by Italians themselves in 1945. Thus ended Fascism in Italy.

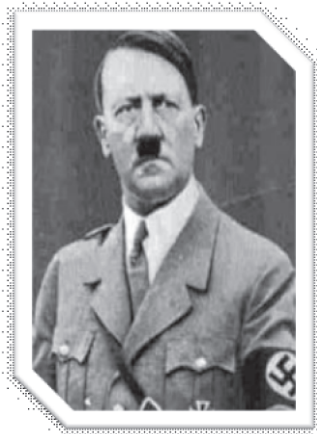
Nazism in Germany:

Germany was defeated in the First World War. The Allies then imposed the Treaty of Versailles on Germany. By this Treaty Germany was deprived of all its colonies. Germany was made to pay very heavy war indemnity to the Allies. The German land and factories were destroyed. Soon after this, Germany was burning with discontent, hatred and revenge. At the same

time Germany had become bankrupt. Unemployment, hunger, starvation, inflation and desperation became the order of the day. At this time Adolf Hitler founded the Nazi party in 1919.

Early Life:

Adolf Hitler was born in Austria in 1889. His parents were Alois Hitler and Clara. He was self-educated man and a great orator. In the World War I, Hitler joined the German army and won the Iron Cross for his valour. After the war he joined politics and organized the National Socialist Party viz., the Nazi Party and formed an army called Brown shirts. 'Swastik' was their symbol. In 1923, Hitler tried to overthrow the government, but



Adolf Hitler (1889-1945)

failed. He was sentenced to imprisonment and was released after nine months. While in jail, Hitler wrote the famous book, 'Mein Kampf' (My Struggle). The book contained the Nazi principles. After release from jail, he reorganized the Nazi Party and strengthened it gradually.

The Nazi Party contested the elections for the 'Reichstag' (German Parliament). In 1933, President Hindenburg appointed Hitler as the Chancellor. After the death of Hindenburg in 1934, he combined the offices of the Chancellor and the President and became a dictator.

The main features of Nazism are –

1. One party rule.
2. Nazification.
3. Racial Supremacy.

4. Anti-Jewish and anti-religious.
5. Importance to state.
6. Glorification of war.

The Nazi Party was made the only political party. Freedom of press and speech were abolished by Hitler. He also centralized all powers of central and local governments, coordinated all labour and youth organizations, and controlled every aspect of national life, including the press, all economic institutions, stage and the cinema. Everybody and everything was Nazified within the country.

Hitler was an opportunist and upheld the racial supremacy of the Germans. In Hitler's opinion, only the Germans were competent enough to rule Europe. He was of the opinion that the German Nordic (Aryan) race was the best in the world. Those, who belong to other races like the Jews and others were expelled



Buchenwald Concentration Camp

from Germany. The Jews were held responsible for all the losses incurred by the nation. They were tortured and killed. Hitler organized a secret police known as '**Gestapo**' to suppress all

the opposition. Hitler set up the Concentration camps for the elimination of Jews. The Nazi Germany deliberately killed about six million Jews through various means like gas chamber, starvation, electrocution, etc. He proclaimed the superiority of the Aryan race over all other races. Drastic steps were taken to appoint Nazis in all the key posts of the government to deprive the Jews of their rights. Likewise, Communists were also killed and eliminated. The Nazis opposed the religion, and did not respect Christianity.

According to Hitler, the individual was for the nation and not the nation for the individual. The individual should not oppose the state and must be ready for all sacrifices.

Through a series of reforms, Hitler reorganized the administration, strengthened the army and achieved general prosperity of the country. Four year plans were started by him to achieve economic development of the country. All economic life was brought under the control of the state. Agriculture and industry were improved. Huge construction programs were started to remove unemployment. He also introduced compulsory military training.

Hitler's primary target was the Treaty of Versailles. It was much against the state of Germany and weakened its military strength. Further, Germany was to pay heavy war indemnity. All these created discontent and dissatisfaction among the Germans and Hitler took advantage of the situation. So, Hitler was waiting for an opportunity to tear the Treaty. To implement the above policies he was ably supported by men like Goebbels, Goering, Rosenberg and others.

Foreign Policy:

Hitler's aim was to achieve total power and make Germany a world power by acquiring more and more territories. Like Mussolini, Hitler too glorified the war. Hitler ordered to expand boundaries of Germany and followed a policy of naked aggression.

Hitler withdrew from the Disarmament Conference and also came out of the League of Nations in 1933. The aims of Nazi Party with regard to foreign policy were union of all Germans and acquisition of more territories. The program of re-armament of Germany commenced in 1935. German troops marched into Rhineland and occupied it in 1936. Further, Austria was annexed. Adolf Hitler formed 'ROME-BERLIN-TOKYO Axis' in 1937 followed by attack on Czechoslovakia and Poland. Thus the Second World War started. He won one country after another in Europe. However, the Germans were defeated and it surrendered to the Allies in 1945 and Adolf Hitler committed suicide. The Nazi dictatorship thus came to an end.

10.3 Second World War [1939 – 1945]

After the First World War the League of Nations was established in order to preserve the world peace and to promote international co-operation. But the League, with all its ideals failed to save the world from the war. After the great economic depression of 1929, the international situation became worse and the world was drifting towards the war. Another world war became inevitable and the war broke out in 1939. The Second World War lasted for six years from 1939 to 1945. It was fought between the Axis Powers viz., Germany, Italy and Japan and the Allied Powers viz., England, France, U.S.S.R. and U.S.A.

This war was more disastrous than the First World War. For the first time in human history, atom bombs were used. The war ended with the crushing defeat of the Axis Powers.

Causes:

1. Treaty of Versailles:

The Treaty of Versailles, 1919 was too severe, and it humiliated the Germans. The Allied Powers treated Germany as they liked and the Germans could not tolerate it any longer. The entire responsibility for the losses of the First World War was put on Germany. The Treaty itself was based on revenge. Germany was deprived of its colonies and coal mines. Besides, its military was weakened, and it could not pay the war indemnity. When Germany could not pay it, France sent an army to occupy the Ruhr Valley, the only rich industrial area left. The post-war economic difficulties caused much discontent. So, Germany was waiting for an opportunity to tear the Treaty of Versailles. Thus, the seeds of the Second World War were sown by the Versailles Treaty.

2. Expansionist Policy of Japan and Italy:

Japan and Italy were not satisfied with the 'Peace Settlement'. They did not receive the proper share of the war spoils. Later, these were the countries, hit hard, as they had limited sources. So, with a view to solve their economic problems, they turned to the policy of aggression and expansion. Japan separated from Allied powers and joined Germany. Its slogan was 'Asia for Asians'. It decided to liberate Asia from the Western yoke. Japan harboured imperialistic aspirations. It developed strong navy and targeted both Manchuria and China.

3. Rise of Dictators:

The rise of dictatorships in Italy under Benito Mussolini, Germany under Adolf Hitler and Japan under the government of Tojo was another cause for the war. They

glorified the war. Mussolini advocated the martial virtues of Italians and reviving the glories of old Roman Empire. Hitler stood for rearmament, revenge and German domination. He spoke of the racial superiority of the Germans and of their mission to spread superior culture by war and conquest. Japan wanted to have its own empire. Later, Italy, Germany and Japan formed an alliance called the 'ROME-BERLIN-TOKYO Axis' in 1937. It proved to be a great danger to the world peace. Then, a totalitarian dictatorship under Joseph Stalin was established in U.S.S.R. It was similar to Hitler's dictatorship. Like Hitler, Stalin also killed his opponents without any mercy.

4. Colonial and Commercial Rivalry:

Another cause for the war was the colonial and commercial rivalry. It was a sort of Economic Nationalism. It was a struggle for raw materials, markets for their products and colonies for excess population. After the First World War, Italy, Germany and Japan were not satisfied. All these countries were poor in natural resources. Added to this, the great depression also affected the economies of these countries. Non availability of raw materials and the absence of markets for manufactured goods created a feeling of economic suffocation. Under these conditions Italy, Germany and Japan came together and embarked upon naked aggression.

5. Failure of the League of Nations:

The League of Nations became too weak and incompetent. The League did not have its own army. It was dominated by few countries like England and France. U.S.A. remained out of the League. As a result, the League totally failed in preserving peace in Europe. When hostility was growing between the two groups the League remained silent. Taking advantage of this, Japan invaded Manchuria in China, Italy invaded Abyssinia and Germany invaded Rhineland and Austria. The League of Nations failed to check these aggressions, and also to prevent the arms race. It was

unfortunate that the League of Nations had lost its credibility and respect. It was sad that the leaders who could have controlled the situation were not sincere in their approach.

6. Rearmament:

The Peace Settlement of 1919 had completely disarmed Germany. But Hitler asserted, "Rearmament was the only road to power and national achievement". Hitler withdrew Germany from World Disarmament Conference and began to re-arm. Adolf Hitler enormously increased the military strength with all kinds of modern weapons, battle ships, aero planes and submarines. Rearmament by Italy, Japan and others ultimately led to the Second World War.

7. Immediate Cause:

On 1st September 1939, Hitler invaded Poland which became the immediate cause for the Second World War. Poland was an ally of England and France. Hence, Britain and France declared war on Germany.

Activity: Collect various photographs of scenes of the Second World War.

Course of the War:

Within a few months, Hitler occupied Denmark, Norway, Holland, Belgium and France. Hitler then tried to intimidate England by heavy bombardment and submarine warfare. London and other cities were bombed heavily. England successfully resisted German attacks. In June 1941, Hitler attacked U.S.S.R. The German army advanced as far as Moscow and Leningrad. Russia suffered heavy losses. Great Britain went to help Russia. So, Russia joined with the Allies. At the end of 1941 Japan joined Hitler. In December, 1941, Japan attacked the naval

base of the U.S.A. at **Pearl Harbour** in the Pacific Ocean. Several American ships were sunk. This forced America to join the war on the side of the Allies. Japan occupied Hong Kong, Philippines, Malaya, Burma, etc.



Pearl Harbour - December
1941

In North Africa heavy fighting took place during 1941-43 between the British and Italian forces. Finally, Italians were driven out of Libya. In 1942, Anglo-American forces occupied Algeria and Tunis and expelled the enemies from Africa. Then, the Allied forces occupied Italy in 1943, and Mussolini took shelter in Germany. In September 1943, Italy unconditionally surrendered to the Allies. By April 1945, the Allied Powers occupied Berlin, the capital of Germany. Meanwhile, Mussolini was assassinated, and Hitler ended his life by committing suicide.

Even after the surrender of Italy and Germany, Japan continued the war. Meanwhile, the American President F.D. Roosevelt died and was succeeded by Harry S Truman. He ordered American Air Force to carry out an atomic attack on Japan. Accordingly, an atom bomb called 'Little Boy' was dropped on the Japanese industrial city of Hiroshima on 6th August 1945 and another bomb,



Dropping of Atom bomb on
Hiroshima [Japan]

'Fat Man' was dropped on Nagasaki on 9th August 1945. The destruction caused by them was so enormous that Japan surrendered unconditionally to American forces. Thus ended the most frightful Second World War after six years of bloody fight.

Results:

1. The Second World War was the most destructive of all the wars, fought until then. About 25 Million people were killed and 50 Million were disabled. Millions of people later died of starvation and diseases. There was a large scale destruction of houses, industries and communication and transport systems. The destruction of agricultural land led to the shortage of food. After the war, most of the countries faced the problems of post war reconstructions.
2. The World War II ended the dictatorships in Italy and Germany. Italy was declared a Republic under Badogli, and Germany was divided into four zones under U.S.A., U.S.S.R., Britain and France. A Tribunal was set up at Nuremberg to conduct trial of leading Nazis. Japan gave up all its rights on China. Japan was occupied by the Allied Powers. (U.S.A.)
3. European domination of the world ended after this war. After the Second World War, U.S.A. and U.S.S.R. emerged as two super powers.
4. The distrust between U.S.A. and U.S.S.R. increased after the war. This led to what is known as the 'Cold War'. The rivalry of these two super powers has been the most important feature of international relations since 1945. As a result, world peace was constantly threatened.
5. The World War resulted in the victory of the principle of Nationalism and the liquidation of Colonialism. The colonial empires of European powers in Asia, Africa and Latin America

came to an end. India, Ceylon, Indonesia and other countries became independent after the war.

6. The Jews had become homeless during the Nazi regime in Germany. About six Million Jews perished in the concentration camps. After the war, with the help of U.S.A., a new home land (Israel) for the Jews was created in 1948.
7. Japan experienced disastrous effects of atomic weapons. The entire atmosphere became poisonous. Most of the new born children suffered from severe deformities.
8. The most important result of the World War Second was the birth of United Nations Organization with the object of preventing wars and maintaining peace in future.

10.4 The United Nations Organization

The United Nations was born out of the ashes of the League of Nations. Though the League of Nations failed, it gave the idea of a world body to the minds of world statesmen to prevent a Third World War and to maintain international peace and security. This was a burning desire of world statesmen.

Realizing the enormous evils of the Second World War, the American President F.D. Roosevelt and the British Prime Minister Sir Winston Churchill were anxious to establish an organization which would prevent war and secure peace. They declared their intention in the Atlantic Charter in August 1941.

The Atlantic Charter was followed by a series of meetings by the world leaders. Stalin, President of U.S.S.R. joined the talks at a later stage. All such efforts led to the establishment of United Nations Organization on 24th October 1945. 24th October is celebrated as the U.N. Day. New York (U.S.A.) is the Headquarters of the U.N.O. Initially, the U.N.O. had 51 member nations including India and it has 193 nations as of 2012. United Nations recognized the following as official languages – English, Spanish, French, Chinese, Russian and Arabic.

Aims and Objectives of the U.N.O.:

1. To maintain international peace and security.
2. To develop friendly relations among the nations.
3. To promote international co-operation in economic, social, cultural, educational and medical fields.
4. To promote international fundamental human rights.
5. To promote higher standard of living.
6. To uphold international laws and agreements.

Organs:

The U.N.O. consists of six principal organs. They are –

1. General assembly.
2. Security council.
3. Economic and social council.
4. Trusteeship council.
5. International court of justice.
6. Secretariat.



The U.N.O. Logo

1. General Assembly:

The General Assembly is a consultative body of U.N.O. It consists of representatives of all member nations. Each member nation has one vote, but may send five representatives. It is empowered to discuss any matter relating to the maintenance of international peace and security. The Assembly meets once a year in September. But special sessions can be held at the request of majority of the members of the Security Council. Its resolutions require 2/3 majority. It elects the Secretary-General, non-permanent members of the Security Council, members of Economic and Social Council and Judges of International Court of Justice, and also discusses budgetary questions. The General Assembly elects its own President and Vice-Presidents every year. Entry of any new member requires of 2/3 majority of the General Assembly.

2. Security Council:

The Security Council is the executive body. It consists of 15 members - 5 permanent and 10 non-permanent. The permanent members are U.S.A., England, France, Russia and China. The non-permanent members are elected for a term of two years. A measure to be carried out in the Security Council has to be accepted by 9 members including all the 5 permanent members. Any permanent member can 'Veto' any decision of the Security Council. 'Veto' is a special power given to the five permanent members to negate any resolution of the United Nations. The Security Council is responsible for the prevention of aggression and to the maintenance of international peace and security.



The United Nations,
Headquarters – New York
[U.S.A.]

3. Economic and Social Council [ECOSOC]:

The Economic and Social Council consists of 54 members, who are elected by the General Assembly for three years. 1/3 of them retire every year. The Council meets at least twice a year. Its main function is to promote welfare around the world, and to improve the economic, social, cultural, educational, health and other related matters.

4. Trusteeship Council:

The Trusteeship Council consists of 14 members. All permanent members of the Security Council are the members of Trusteeship Council. Its duty is to investigate

the conditions of Trust Territories and to advise the General Assembly. In fact, all the 11 Trust Territories became independent in 1994, which were detached from Japan and Italy. As a result, in 1994 the Security Council decided formally to suspend its operation and will meet as and when required.

5. International Court of Justice:

The International Court of Justice is located at The Hague in Netherlands. It consists of 15 Judges, who are elected by the General Assembly. Its main function is to settle the international disputes and it also acts as an advisory body. The tenure of office of a judge is 9 years. But he is eligible for re-election. No country can represent more than one judge at the same time.

6. Secretariat:

Secretariat is headed by the Secretary-General. It carries on the day-to-day administration of the U.N.O. Its headquarters is in New York. The term of the Secretary-General is five years. It is the duty of the Secretary-General to see that all branches of the U.N.O. function properly, and to submit an annual report to the General Assembly on the working of the U.N. He acts as the Secretary in all meetings of the General Assembly, the Security Council and the Economic and Social Council.

Trygve Lie of Norway was appointed as the first Secretary-General in 1946. The present Secretary-General is Ban Ki-Moon of South Korea (as on 2012)

General Secretaries

No.	Name	Country	Period
1.	Trygve Lie	Norway	1946-1953
2.	Dag Hammarskjold	Sweden	1953-1961
3.	U Thant	Myanmar (Burma)	1961-1971
4.	Kurt Waldheim	Austria	1972-1981
5.	Javier Perez De Cuellar	Peru	1982-1991
6.	Boutros Boutros Ghali	Egypt	1992-1997
7.	Kofi Annan	Ghana	1997-2006
8.	Ban Ki-Moon	South Korea	2007-

Besides these, there are a number of specialized agencies which deal with specific international problems. Some of the agencies are –

- 1. ILO:** International Labour Organization with headquarters at Geneva, Switzerland.
- 2. FAO:** Food and Agricultural Organization with headquarters at Rome, Italy.
- 3. UNESCO:** United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization with headquarters at Paris, France.
- 4. IBRD:** International Bank for Reconstruction and Development with headquarters at Washington D.C., USA.
- 5. IMF:** International Monetary Fund with headquarters at Washington D.C., USA.
- 6. WHO:** World Health Organization with headquarters at Geneva, Switzerland.
- 7. WTO:** World Trade Organization with headquarters at Geneva, Switzerland.
- 8. IAEA:** International Atomic Energy Agency with headquarters at Vienna, Austria.
- 9. UNICEF:** United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund with headquarters at New York, U.S.A.

10. WMO: World Meteorological Organization with headquarters at Geneva in Switzerland.

11. ICAO: International Civil Aviation Organization with headquarters at Montreal, Canada.

Activity 1: Collect various emblems of the specialized agencies of the U.N.O.

Achievements of the U.N.O.:

The U.N. has carried out several successful programs and operations. The achievements of the U.N. may be grouped under two headings, namely, political and non-political.

Political: In the political field, the U.N.O. has notable achievements. The foremost achievement of the U.N. is that, there has not been a global war and the use of nuclear weapons since 1945.

The first issue that was solved by the U.N.O. was the case of Iran. Russian troops were stationed on the northern borders of Iran during the Second World War. After the war, Iran complained to the U.N.O. So, the U.N.O. intervened and made the Russian troops to withdraw from Iran in 1946.

- In 1947, a quarrel started in Indonesia between Holland and Indonesia. It was settled by the U.N. in 1948.
- In September 1948, France, England and U.S.A. complained to the Security Council about the blockade of Berlin by the U.S.S.R. Later, an agreement was reached due to the efforts of U.N.O.
- It was able to stop the fighting between the Israeli Jews and Arabs in Palestine in 1948.
- The U.N.O. ordered cease - fire in Kashmir in 1948.

- In the Korean crisis when war broke out between North and South Korea, the U.N.O. used armed forces to settle the dispute.
- The Suez Canal and Vietnam problems were solved with the mediation of the U. N. O.
- It also put an end to the fighting between Iraq and Iran in 1989.
- Iraq occupied Kuwait in 1990. Immediately, Kuwait approached U.N.O. for needful action. So, the U.N. made Iraq vacate Kuwait in 1991.
- U.N.O. has worked to maintain peace in several countries of the world. It has carried out peace-keeping operations in Greece, Lebanon, Cyprus, Congo, Cambodia, Korea, Kosovo, etc.
- South Africa was following the Apartheid policy. So, the U.N. set up a special committee against it and imposed sanctions against South Africa in 1954. Ultimately, the Apartheid regime in South Africa came to an end in 1991 due to the efforts of the U.N.O.

Apartheid Problem in South Africa

In South Africa about 80% of the population were the black Negroes and 20% were the Whites (British). But the government was dominated by the Whites. The Negroes were deprived of all the political, economic and social rights. This was the Apartheid policy or the racial discrimination between the Whites and Blacks. This policy could be seen in the hotels, hospitals, schools and colleges, railway bogies, beaches, etc.

Nelson Mandela, President of African National Congress started a movement against the Apartheid policy. Mandela was kept in the Robin island prison in 1964. With the efforts of the U.N.O. and others he was released in 1990 after 27 years of imprisonment. Then, the Negroes came to have their government under the President ship of Nelson Mandela.

Non-Political:

- A notable achievement of the U.N.O. was the adoption of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights in the General Assembly on 10th December 1948. The Declaration included articles like the right to life, liberty and security of person, freedom from slavery, freedom of thought, the right to vote, to work, etc.
- U.N.O. has done excellent work through its specialized agencies. The ILO has made the member nations to improve the conditions of the labourers.
- FAO has assisted the nations to increase the food production in farms, forests, fisheries and increase nutrition level. It also helped to feed millions of hungry children.
- IMF and IBRD are giving funds for the economic development of different backward countries.
- UNESCO has done much work in many backward countries in the social, educational, economic, technological and other fields. The U.N.O. helped the refugees of war, earthquake, tsunami, etc. It has arranged for food, shelter and rehabilitation of war victims throughout the world. The U.N.O. has preserved many cultural sites throughout the world viz., Hampi, Pattadakal, Konark, etc.
- UNICEF is doing its best to eradicate hunger and malnutrition among children. In 1959, the General Assembly adopted the 'Declaration of the Right of the Child'. It entitles the child to relief, protection in all circumstances, social security to grow up and develop health, education, etc.

- WHO has tried to improve the condition of health of the people. It has carried out a continuous efforts to eradicate diseases like Malaria, Cholera, Small-pox, TB, Leprosy, Polio, etc. Some diseases have been completely eradicated. It has also aided children and other weaker social groups to meet their special needs.

Indians in the U.N.O.

India has been actively involved with U.N.O. right from the beginning. Many Indians have served in high positions in the UN. Vijayalakshmi Pandit was the first woman President of the General Assembly. Justice Dr. Nagendra Singh served as the President of the International Court of Justice. Sir Ramaswamy Mudaliar worked as the President of ECOSOC. Dr. S. Radhakrishnan was the President of the UNESCO and Shiva Rao worked as the President of Trusteeship Council. Shashi Taroor was an Under Secretary in the U.N.O.

Demand For The Expansion Of The Security Council

The Security Council of the United Nations Organization was originally a body of eleven members with five permanent and six non-permanent. The number was increased in 1963 to 15 due to the increase in the membership of the U.N.O., but U.S.A, Russia, Britain, France and China continued to be the permanent members. Now, there is a demand as well as the need to add five more new countries as permanent members because at present there are 193 member nations in the U.N.O. The countries proposed to be included are India, Japan, Nigeria, Brazil and Germany. India is accelerating its efforts to get a permanent seat in the Security Council with 'Veto' power. The non-aligned and Common Wealth countries have promised to support India's claim. In fact, India has taken up the leadership of developing countries in many issues. The merits claimed are, India is the world's largest democracy and second most populous country of the world and one of the fastest growing economies of the world.

For the expansion of the Security Council the U.N. General Assembly has to vote with a 2/3 majority including the five permanent members.

Important Days Observed by the U.N.O.

- 27 January - International Day in memory of the Victims of the Holocaust
- 4 February - World Cancer Day
- 20 February - World Day of Social Justice
- 8 March - International Women's Day
- 22 March - World Water Day
- 7 April - World Health Day
- 25 April - World Malaria Day
- 1 May - World Labourer's Day
- 3 May - World Press Freedom Day
- 15 May - International Day of Families
- 31 May - World No-Tobacco Day
- 1 June - Global Day of Parents
- 5 June - World Environment Day
- 14 June - World Blood Donor Day
- 11 July - World Population Day
- 19 August - World Humanitarian Day
- 15 September - International day of Democracy
- 21 September - International Day for Peace
- 27 September - World Tourism Day
- 2 October - International Day of Non-Violence
- 9 October - World Post Day
- 24 October - United Nations Day
- 14 November - World Diabetes Day
- 1 December - World Aids Day
- 10 December - Human Rights Day

Questions

Answer in a word or one sentence (each carries 1Mark)

1. When did the First World War break out?
2. Who was the Emperor of Germany during the First World War?
3. Mention the immediate cause for the First World War.
4. Why did U.S.A. join the First World War?
5. Which conference officially ended the First World War?
6. Who was the founder of Fascism ?
7. What is the meaning of the word 'Fascism'?
8. Name the paper edited by Mussolini.
9. Who declared, 'Italy must expand or perish'?
10. Where was Adolf Hitler born?
11. Who was the founder of Nazism?
12. Mention the book written by Hitler.
13. Name the German Parliament.
14. What is Gestapo?
15. Why did U.S.A. join the Second World War?

16. Who ordered American Air Force to drop atom bombs on Japan?
17. When was Israel created for the Jews?
18. When was the U.N.O. established?
19. Which day is celebrated as U.N. Day?
20. Where is the Headquarters of U.N.O.?
21. How many member nations are there in the U.N.O. at present?
22. Where is the International Court of Justice?
23. Who is the present Secretary- General of the U.N.O.?
24. Expand (Any one)– ECOSOC, ILO, FAO, UNESCO, IBRD, IMF, WHO and WTO.

Answer in two words or two sentences: (each carries

2 Marks)

1. Name the two rival alliances formed during the First World War.
2. Name the Treaty signed by the Allied countries with Germany. When was it signed?
3. Mention the four empires which were overthrown after the First World War.

4. When was the League of Nations established? Where was its headquarters?
5. Write any two principles of Fascism.
6. Write any two Principles of Nazism.
7. Name the two rival Powers of the Second World War.
8. Name the Axis Powers.
9. Name the Allied Powers.
10. Name the cities of Japan where the atom bombs were dropped during the Second World War.
11. Write any two aims of the U.N.O.
12. Name any two official languages of the U.N.O.
13. Mention the five permanent members of the Security Council.
14. What is 'Veto' power?

Answer in 15 to 20 sentences (each carries 5 marks)

1. Describe the various results of the First World War.
2. Explain the provisions of the Treaty of Versailles.
3. Describe the achievements of Mussolini.
4. Explain the features of Nazism.

5. State the results of the Second World War.
6. Write a note on the Organs of the U.N.O.

Answer in 30 to 40 sentences (each carries 10 Marks)

1. Explain the causes and results of the First World War.
2. Explain the causes and results of the Second World War.
3. Describe the political and non-political achievements of the U.N.O.



CHAPTER 11

CONTEMPORARY WORLD

Introduction

The term 'Contemporary History' refers to the post World War II period. It covers events such as, the Cold War disintegration of Soviet Union, the formation of CIS, the Korean and Vietnam wars, Afghan civil war, the stationing of U.S. forces in Japan, and in South Korea, the Arab-Israeli conflict, the Arab spring, Indian Independence, African civil war, formation of the people's Republic of China, etc. This chapter concentrates upon Cold War, disintegration of U.S.S.R and the formation of CIS.

At the end of the 20th Century, the world witnessed more technological advancement compared to the preceding history. Computers, the internet, and other modern technologies radically altered daily lives, increased globalization and the dominance of America in the modern world. It has caused anti-western and anti-American feelings in various parts of the world, especially in the Middle East.

Contemporary World



In the contemporary era, the world is facing several issues. First of all, wealth is concentrated among the Western industrialized nations, along with a few Asian nations. Powerful nations with large economies and wealthy individuals can improve the rapidly evolving economies of the Third world. However, developing countries face many challenges, e.g.: Rapidly growing populations and the need to protect environment. Secondly, Diseases threatening to destabilize many regions of the world for e.g.: New viruses, such as SARS, West Nile, Bird Flu and HIV. Terrorism, dictatorship, and the spread of Nuclear Weapons are also issues requiring immediate attention.

Climate Change and global warming are some of the grave problems. The changes in climate over the past century have been attributed to various factors which have resulted in global warming. It has affected the natural environment and human life. E.g. : Ice-shelf disruption, rising sea level, and changes in rainfall patterns. Water scarcity in some regions, changes in mountain snow pack and adverse health effects are due to warmer temperatures. The recent developments and convergences in various fields of technology hold possible future impacts.

Middle East: The region between the Mediterranean coast and the North-Western Frontier of India and Pakistan is described as the Middle East. Turkey, Egypt, Palestine, Iran, Saudi Arabia, Iraq and Jordan are some of the important countries of the Middle East.

West Asia: The term “West Asia” is used to denote the Arab Countries extending from Syria to Egypt and also Israel.

11.1 Cold War (1945 – 1991)

Meaning:

The term 'Cold War' came to be used after World War II. Cold War was a sustained state of political and military tension between the powers of the Western world led by United States of America and the Communist world led by Soviet Union.

The U.S.A and Soviet Union emerged as super powers of the world, contending against each other. The rivalry between the two super powers led to the growth of a tense atmosphere. This development in international relations has been denoted by the term 'Cold War'. It was a situation of **no war and no peace**.

At the end of World War II, George Orwell, an English author and journalist used 'Cold War' as a general term in his essay 'You and the Atomic Bomb' published in 1945. The term 'Cold War' was specifically first used by the American Statesman 'Bernard Baruch' in 1947. Friedman said that 'A world divided into two camps is still a world living under the shadow of wars'. Thus Cold War is not an armed war, it is better known as 'Propaganda war' and also era of uneasy peace.

Ideological Differences

During the Cold War era, there has been a struggle for world leadership by rival political systems. This Cold War is not only confined to U.S.A. or U.S.S.R. but it engulfed the entire world as many of the countries associated themselves with one super power or the other. It clearly indicates that the politics of Cold War aimed at enhancing the spheres of influence of the

super powers. Propaganda, espionage and military alliances were used by the super powers to weaken each other and enhance their own strength.

Causes for Cold War

During the World War II Soviet Union and the western powers consisting of U.K., France and USA fought together against Germany and its allies. But just after the War distrust and suspicion loomed over Soviet Union and the Western powers.

1. Russia's refusal to evacuate from Iran:

After the World War II, Britain and USA withdrew their forces from Iran, but the Soviet Union refused. Finally it was only after the UN intervention that Russia withdrew its forces. It embittered the relations between the Western powers and Soviet Union.

2. Sovietization of Eastern Europe:

Soviet Union was accused of not honouring the pledges of the Yalta and the Balkan agreements. At Yalta, the Western powers recognized the military authority of Russia over Eastern and Central Europe. But it was agreed that, in all the liberated countries of Europe democratic institutions would be established and free elections be held. After the World War II the communist supported governments were established in the entire Balkan region through the intervention of Russia. The Russian intervention in Eastern Europe was resented by the Western powers and they united to check the spread of communism and Russian influence.

The Importance of the Yalta Conference

'Yalta' is a place of resorts in the city of Crimea in present Ukraine. This conference was held in 1945, Churchill of U.K Franklin Roosevelt of U.S.A and Joseph Stalin of U.S.S.R participated in it. And they agreed to divide Germany into three parts of occupation and a fourth to be added if France agreed to participate. But France did not respond.

3. Soviet influence in Greece:

In 1944 Greece secured its independence from Nazi rule with the support of Britain. When the German forces left Greece, the British entered Greece. According to a treaty concluded between Soviet Union and Britain, Russia recognized the British sphere of influence in Greece. At the same time there was a clash between the communists and royalists in Greece. The Western powers strongly believed that Soviet Union had instigated a communist revolution in Greece. The British Government sought the support of U.S.A. Later on the Greek Government also sought the support of America. In 1947 Truman, the President of America announced both military and economic assistance to Greece to check the communist influence in Greece.

4. Soviet influence in Turkey:

Just after the World War II Soviet Union exerted pressure on Turkey to cede some of its territories. But Turkey refused to oblige and also secured American assistance. USA followed the policy of defending Turkey and Greece against the possible attack of the Soviet Union. Truman, the President of America enunciated his famous 'Truman Doctrine'. U.S. Congress immediately decided to extend economic and military aid to Turkey.

5. Problems relating to Germany:

The Soviet Union suffered heavy losses during World War II against Germany. At the Yalta Conference Stalin demanded 10,000 million dollars as reparations from Germany. After the war, the Soviet Union destroyed the German Industries and transferred costly German machines to Russia, because of which the German economy shattered. Britain and U.S.A. had to give huge amount of economic aid to reconstruct the German economy.

6. The secrecy of the Atom Bomb:

U.S.A kept the technology of the atom bomb a secret from U.S.S.R, though Soviet Union was an ally of United States during the war period. Stalin considered it as a betrayal of trust and confidence in Russia. Moreover Soviet Union also felt concerned about its own security.

7. Communist activities in the U.S.:

Soviet Union began to encourage communist activities and espionage in United States of America. In 1945 it was discovered by the American strategic services that some of the secret documents had been spuriously passed on to the communist Agency. More over some of the highly placed officials had leaked out the atomic secrets and sent the samples of uranium to the Soviet Union.

Major political events during Cold War period

After the World War II, Soviet Russia encouraged communist movement in the Eastern European countries like Poland, Bulgaria and Rumania.

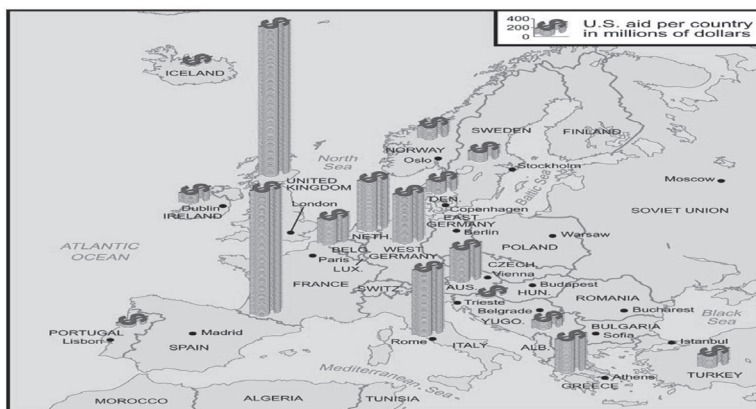
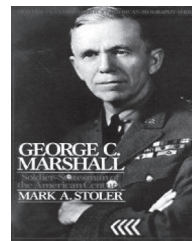
Truman Doctrine- 1947



It was advocated by Truman, the then President of U.S. This policy aimed at – U.S support to the people who are resisting armed subjugation by armed minorities or out-side pressures. Truman thought that such groups and outside pressures will help totalitarian regimes which in turn will pose a threat to international peace and National security of U.S.A. By this policy he actually decided to check communist expansion in Eastern Europe. By this Doctrine, he provided Greece and Turkey economic and military aid to the tune of 400 million dollars.

Marshall Plan

The Marshall plan was announced by U.S.A. This plan was prepared by Secretary of State George Marshall in 1947. In this plan he offered American aid to promote recovery and reconstruction of war torn European countries. But the main aim was to contain communism in Europe.



Marshall plan Aid to Europe - 1948 - 1952 As shown is the Map.

Molotov Plan :

Vyacheslav Molotov, the Foreign affairs minister of Russia proposed the Molotov Plan. It was a response to the Marshall Plan of U.S.A., Russia understood the intention behind Marshall Plan and refused to accept it along with East European satellite nations. It prepared its own Economic assistance to them, it is also known as COMECON-The Council of Mutual Economic Assistance

Berlin Blockade (German problem)-1949 :

The Cold War tensions between Soviet Union and Western powers increased due to the German problem. After the World War II Germany was put under the occupation of victorious allies. It was divided into East and West Germany. East Germany was under Russian control. So the Russian President Stalin blocked Berlin and cut off all land and sea contacts between West Germany and Berlin. The Berlin Blockade was not a complete blockade it allowed permitted access and exit through three air corridors. The Blockade was withdrawn after eleven months. It is the first Berlin crisis. America started anti-communist propaganda all over the world.



The only three permissible air corridors to Berlin.



C-47s unloading at Tempelhof Airport in Berlin during the Berlin Blockade

In China communist regime headed by Mao-Tse-Tung came into existence in 1949. U.S.S.R and China encouraged communist Revolutions in other countries. In 1949 U.S.S.R. tested the nuclear bomb. This added to the tension between the U.S.S.R. and U.S.A. Many East European countries allied themselves with the U.S.S.R. The U.S.S.R. and China signed a defense treaty in 1950.

Civil war in Korea 1950-53

The Cold War intensified between 1950 and 1953 when there was a civil war in Korea. The U.S.A. helped South Korea, and China extended help to North Korea. The civil war ended with the division of Korea into North Korea and South Korea. In 1953, an armistice was concluded between the two Koreas.

The defense pacts like NATO, CEATO and CENTO were formed under U.S. leadership. In response U.S.S.R signed Warsaw Pact. A detailed information is given in the forth coming pages.

Warsaw Pact-1955

In 1955 U.S.S.R. formed the Warsaw pact with East European countries. Bulgaria, Hungary, East Germany, Czechoslovakia, Rumania and Poland against NATO. Warsaw is the capital of Poland.

The Warsaw pact intensified the rivalry

2014-2015



U.S.A landed man on the moon

between U.S.A and U.S.S.R. Testing of atomic and hydrogen bomb and testing of Inter – Continental Ballistic Missiles (ICBM) by U.S.S.R. and U.S.A, further intensified the Cold War. Even in space research the competition between the two countries intensified and the U.S.S.R. launched a spacecraft. In turn U.S.A. landed a man on the moon.

Second Berlin Crisis – 1958-1961

In regard to the problem of Germany there was no significant progress in the relations between the Western powers and Soviet Union. A second Berlin Crisis began in 1958 with the Russian president Khrushchev's ultimatum that, West Berlin must be evacuated within six months. But this crisis was averted and Khrushchev agreed to meet American president Eisenhower. Khrushchev was also invited to U.S.A. So by 1959 there was an improvement in the Soviet-American relations.

In 1961 John F. Kennedy became the President of the U.S.A. He tried to seek 'areas of co-operation' with Soviet Union. But the circumstances were not favourable. Both were secretly spying the other [K.G.B.- Russia, C.I.A.-America]. In 1961 a 25 mile long Berlin partition wall was constructed to check the fleeing of people from East Berlin to West Berlin.

KGB : Komitet Gosudar stvennoj Bezopanoti CIA : Central Intelligence Agency
--



Cuban Crisis

Russia planned to station its missiles in Cuba. John F. Kennedy, the President of U.S.A. blockaded Cuba, and thereby prevented the carrying of missiles warships, from entering Cuba. Kennedy ordered to assassinate Castro, the President of Cuba, but failed.

This took an ugly turn and the war between the two super powers seemed inevitable. There was a fear of war in the air. With the intervention of U.N.O. Khrushchev agreed to recall the Russian military from Cuba, averting the crisis.

In October 1962, an American U-2 spy plane secretly photographed nuclear missile sites being built by the Soviet Union on the island of Cuba. President Kennedy did not want the Soviet Union and Cuba to know that he had discovered the missiles. After several rounds of talks with his advisors, Kennedy decided to place a naval blockade, or a ring of ships, around Cuba. The aim of this (quarantine, as he called it) was to prevent the Soviets from bringing in more military supplies. He demanded the removal of the missiles already there and the destruction of the sites.

Nuclear Test Ban Treaty - 1963

In 1963 Russia and England entered into NTBT(Nuclear Test Ban Treaty) by which they agreed not to test nuclear weapons

either in the air or at the bottom of the sea. With this agreement the fear of Cold War also began to decrease.

SALT I PACT – 1973 and SALT II PACT – 1979 :

Nixon, the President of America and Brezhnev, the President of Russia signed SALT I pact in 1973 [Strategic Arms Limitations Talks] Brezhnev paid a goodwill visit to America. In 1979 Jimmy Carter, the President of America tried to place-SALT II agreement. But did not get a positive response from Russia.

The Vietnam War- 1955-1975:

There was a Civil War in Vietnam, between Democrats of South Vietnam and Communists of North Vietnam. America supported Democrats. China and Russia supported Communists. So there was a fear of a war. America suffered heavy losses and withdrew from Vietnam. The Vietnam War ended in 1975 and Vietnam was united in the same year.



Richard Nixon With Mao In 1972



Leonid Brezhnev and Jimmy Carter in 1973

End of Cold War

Mikhail Gorbachev became the President of U.S.S.R in 1988. The Soviet economy was stagnant and faced a sharp fall in foreign currency earnings, as a result of the downward slide in oil prices. These issues prompted Gorbachev to initiate measures to revive the ailing state. Gorbachev, announced an

agenda of reforms called 'Perestroika', [reconstruction] and Glasnost (openness). The Soviet alliance was on the brink of collapse and this deprived Soviet military support to the communist leaders of the Warsaw Pact states who were losing power. The communist party was forced to surrender its 73 year old monopoly. The U.S.S.R was declared officially dissolved on December 25, 1991, leaving the United States as a dominant Military power. In 1992 George Bush (Sr), the President of USA and Boris Yeltsin, the President of Russia met and ended the Cold War.

Activity : Collect the details about the events of Cold war which are not mentioned in the text.



Michail Gorbachev and Ronald Reagan signing the INF Treaty at the White House in 1987



Eastern Block Members Centries



Fall of the Berlin wall in the 1989

Summits 1985-1991**1) Geneva summit (I summit -1985)**

In November 1985 [Geneva-Switzerland] Reagan and Gorbachev agreed in principle to reduce each others nuclear arsenal by 50 percent.

2) Reykjavik summit (II summit-1985)

It was held in Iceland. The Negotiations failed between Regan and Gorbachev.

3) INF treaty (III Summit-1987)

The third summit in 1987 led to a breakthrough with the signing of the Inter mediate Range Nuclear Forces Treaty (INF) between U.S.S.R. and Soviet Union.

4) Moscow Summit (IV Summit-1989)

The Fourth summit was held in Moscow in 1989 Gorbachev and George. H.W. Bush signed START I, (Strategic Arms Reduction Treaty-I) in 1989.

Regional Military Pacts:**(1) NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organization -1949)**

NATO was established in 1949 at Washington. This was a military pact formed by 15 European countries under the leadership of America against Russia. The members are America, Britain, France, Belgium, Canada, Portugal, Netherland, Luxemburg, Italy, Norway, Denmark, and Iceland. Later on



NATO countries

Federal Republic of Germany, Greece and Turkey became

its members. Hungary and Poland joined NATO in 1999 (presently NATO has 27 members). NATO members passed a resolution to help its members if attacked by any foreign power and fight the enemy together. The NATO has contributory military and its headquarters is in Paris.

(2) SEATO (Manila Pact-1954)

The South East Asia Treaty Organization was born due to the fear created by the spread of communism. The establishment of communist rule in China further enhanced the fear of the spread of communism in South East Asia and Pacific regions. The United States and Western Powers decided to establish a regional collective defense system.

After many discussions in various places, England, America, France, Australia, New Zealand, Thailand, Philippines and Pakistan met at Manila the capital of Philippines in 1954 and signed a pact, in the interest of South East Asia.

The chief purpose of the SEATO was to forestall the communist aggression. This was put to test in the Vietnam War. After a prolonged war America lost her prestige and consequently the SEATO agreement was dissolved in 1975.



(3) ANZUS Pact – 1951

It was established in 1951. It was a military pact between Australia, New Zealand and America. By this pact the signatory nations agreed to help each other in case of aggression on any member in the Pacific region.

ANZUS: A – Australia, NZ- New Zealand, US – America.

(4) CENTO or THE BAGHDAD PACT-1955 (Central Treaty Organization) :

The Baghdad Pact also known as CENTO was signed in 1955. U.K took initiative in its organizing. But it did not join. Turkey and Iraq were its members. Later England, Pakistan and Iran joined it. It was an Anti-Soviet military block in the Middle East. Karim Kaseem, the President of Iraq flouted the Baghdad Pact in 1958. So CENTO failed to remain military block and could not contain communist expansion.

(5) WARSAW Pact (1955-1991)

The details of the Warsaw Pact have already been discussed in the major political events during the Cold War period. The Pact came to an end in 1991 with the disintegration of U.S.S.R.

Effects of the Cold War

1. Both the United States of America and the Soviet Union built up huge arsenals of atomic weapons and ballistic missiles.
2. The military blocs NATO and the Warsaw Pact were formed
3. It led to destructive conflicts like the Vietnam War and the Korean War.
4. The Soviet Union collapsed due to economic weaknesses.

5. The demolition of the Berlin Wall unified the East Germany and the West Germany.
6. The Warsaw Pact was dissolved.
7. The Baltic States and some former Soviet Republics achieved independence.
8. America became the sole super power of the world.
9. Communism received a setback worldwide.

11.2 Disintegration of Soviet Union: 1991

Russia, as a communist nation had drawn the attention of the entire world since the Bolshevik Revolution in 1917. It resulted in the emergence of Soviet Russia as a super power. The world watched the political developments in Russia with a keen interest. During the Cold War U.S.A. and U.S.S.R. contested to extend their spheres of influence in various parts of the world. With the disintegration of Soviet Union in 1991 America has emerged as the greatest power in the world.

Factors responsible for the disintegration of U.S.S.R :

- Too much restriction on individual liberty.
- Failure to establish equality among the people.
- Excessive importance to defense industry.
- Negligence of agriculture.
- Iron curtain policy
- Liberal policies introduced by Gorbachev.
- Conflicting cultural and ethnic groups.

Post-Soviet states in alphabetical order:

1. Armenia, 2. Azerbaijan, 3. Belarus, 4. Estonia, 5. Georgia, 6. Kazakhstan, 7. Kyrgyzstan, 8. Latvia, 9. Lithuania, 10. Moldova, 11. Russia, 12. Tajikistan, 13. Turkmenistan, 14. Ukraine, 15. Uzbekistan

Mikhail Gorbachev:

In 1988 Gorbachev was elected as president of the Soviet Union. Very soon he became the most influential politician in the U.S.S.R. He followed a unique policy by which several changes were introduced in the administrative system of the U.S.S.R. He tried to change the 'Iron curtain' image of Russia



by following a liberal policy to restructure the Soviet society and economy. Gorbachev introduced the policy of openness in external relations which was called 'Glasnost'. In order to reconstruct the society and economy of Russia he started 'Perestroika'. Thus, the era of liberalization was inaugurated in the Soviet Union.

Gorbachev tried to create a new humane and democratic image of Socialism. He promised freedom of religion to the people of all faiths. He paid due importance to human rights issues and proceeded towards demilitarization in a phased manner.

Iron Curtain : The military, political, and ideological barrier established between the Soviet bloc and western Europe from 1945 to 1990. It was a policy intended to keep the people aloof from outside developments and similarly the developments within reaching the outside world.

De-Stalinization: The process of discrediting and eliminating the political policies, methods, and personal image of Joseph Stalin.

Birth of the Soviet opposition party:

The separatist movements started in different parts of the U.S.S.R. It grew especially in Lithuania, Latvia and Estonia. The central committee of the Soviet Communist Party felt that the separatist elements in these Balkan states were taking advantage of democracy and Glasnost to alienate themselves from the rest of the country. The committee held that 'Perestroika' was creating a national awareness among the people and encouraging them to develop ideas of self-determination.

The policies of Gorbachev were strongly criticized and his authority was also questioned by a sizeable opposition group. In 1989, a group of 368 legislators formed an opposition to Gorbachev in the Soviet parliament. This event can be described as 'The Birth of Soviet Opposition Party'. The most prominent opponents were the human rights activists like, Andrei Sakharov and Boris Yeltsin. The opposition group came to be known as 'Inter Regional Deputies Group'. Gorbachev had suggested a number of reforms to restructure the economy and society of Soviet Union. Initially Lithuania, Estonia and Latvia declared their Sovereignty, which was approved by the Supreme Soviet, in 1990. By October 1991 Azerbaijan declared itself a sovereign country.

The Catastrophe

Andrei Sakharov, the famous dissident called for the complete destruction of Soviet Union's. 'Empire-like structure' built on oppression. He advocated the establishment of a voluntary confederation. He wanted the Soviet Union to destroy the centralized administration, which had been established by Stalin. He urged that 75 Soviet Republics and Homelands, which had been set aside for over 100 ethnic groups had to be granted independence to the maximum extent.

Boris Yeltsin

In 1989 the Soviet Union proceeded towards a democratic set up. The first ever multi candidate elections for a new super parliament were held. Boris Yeltsin, an opponent of Gorbachev emerged victorious. U.S.S.R. faced a downward trend in the economic situation. Political stability was disturbed due to ethnic violence at Azerbaijan and Armenia. Gorbachev was unable to prevent the states from declaring their sovereignty

and Independence one after the other. Boris Yeltsin, the President of Russia emerged as the centre of power.

Coup d'état (1991)

A historic event took place in 1991 from August 19 to August 21. A group of hardliners overthrew the Government; they seized power and deposed Gorbachev, who was on a holiday in Crimea. An emergency was declared for six months. They explained that Gorbachev was too ill to perform his professional functions. The coup was a failure; it collapsed on August 21, 1991. There were widespread agitations against the hardliners as they were against their own countrymen. The Parliament reinstated Gorbachev as the President. The leaders of the coup were arrested and tried for treason. The dreams of Gorbachev were shattered as the Republics broke away from the communist rule and declared their Independence. The 'Three Baltic states', Lithuania, Latvia, and Estonia and Ukraine, Georgia, Uzbekistan, Byeloruss, Moldavia and Kyrgystan left the Soviet Union.

Soon Gorbachev resigned on December 25, 1991 as head of the communist party. The party was dissolved. The leaders of 11 out of 12 Soviet Republics signed a historic agreement at 'Alma-ata'. The agreement proclaimed a New Commonwealth of Independent States. This signified the "Disintegration of the Soviet Union". Boris Yeltsin took over as the Head of the New Commonwealth of Independent States.

Coup d'état - a sudden and decisive change of government illegally or by force. Coup, putsch, takeover · group action - action taken by a group of people

Dissolution of the Soviet Union



Tanks at Red Square during the 1991 Soviet coup d'état attempt

UNI-POLAR WORLD

The end of the Cold War led to the emergence of a Uni-polar world. After the World War II, the world was divided into two poles the West led by USA. and the East led by U.S.S.R. The disintegration of U.S.S.R led to the emergence of USA as the only super power. As a result the Bipolar world became Uni-polar world.

11.3 COMMON WEALTH OF INDEPENDENT STATES (CIS)

CIS was founded in 1991, by the Republic of Belarus, the Russian Federation and Ukraine. The leaders met in Belarus and signed an agreement to form the Common Wealth of Independent States at Minsk.



CIS Flag



CIS Emblem

C.I.S. CHARTER

Aims and objectives of CIS

- 1) All the members are Sovereign and Independent Nations.
- 2) The existing borders of each Republic was recognized.
- 3) To establish a free market ruble zone embracing the Republics.
- 4) To establish a joint Defense Force of participating Republics.
- 5) To promote co-operation on cross-border crime prevention.
- 6) To prevent armed conflicts on the territory of the member states.
- 7) To co-ordinate the foreign and economic policies of member states.



CIS Map

PRESENT COMMONWEALTH OF INDEPENDENT STATES

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1) Azerbaijan | 2) Armenia | 3) Belarus | 4) Georgia |
| 5) Kazakhstan | 6) Moldova | 7) Kyrgyzstan | 8) Russia |
| 9) Tajikistan | 10) Turkmenistan | 11) Uzbekistan | 12) Ukraine |

The headquarters of CIS is at Minsk.



Signing the agreement which established the CIS

Independent Baltic States:

The following Baltic states refused to join CIS.

- 1) Estonia
- 2) Latvia
- 3) Lithuania

QUESTIONS

Answer in one word or sentence each (Each carries one mark):

- (1) When was the term 'Cold War' used for the first time?
- (2) What is Cold War?

- (3) Who wrote an essay 'You and the Atomic Bomb'?
- (4) Name the American statesman to use the term 'Cold War' specifically.
- (5) Who was Truman?
- (6) What was the aim of Marshall Plan?
- (7) In response to Marshal plan which plan was introduced by Soviet Union?
- (8) Expand NATO.
- (9) Expand SEATO.
- (10) Expand CENTO.
- (11) When did U.S.S.R form the Warsaw Pact?
- (12) In which year was the Berlin Wall constructed?
- (13) Name the Russian Intelligence Agency.
- (14) Name the American Intelligence Agency.
- (15) When was Nuclear Test Ban Treaty signed?
- (16) When did Vietnam War come to an end?
- (17) Expand SALT.

-
- (18) In which year did the 'Cold War' end?
 - (19) Where is the head quarters of NATO?
 - (20) What was the main aim of SEATO?
 - (21) When did Soviet Union disintegrate?
 - (22) What is 'Glasnost'?
 - (23) What is 'Perestroika'?
 - (24) Who headed C.I.S. after the disintegration of Soviet Union?
 - (25) Where is the head quarters of C.I.S?

Answer in two words or two sentence each (Each carries Two marks):

- (1) Name any four member countries of NATO.
- (2) Name any four member countries of SEATO.
- (3) Name any four member countries of CENTO.
- (4) Name the anti American military organization. When did it come into existence?
- (5) Name any two member countries of Warsaw Pact.
- (6) Name any two Independent Baltic states.

- (7) Name the Presidents of America and Russia who ended the Cold War.
- (8) When was NATO established and Where?
- (9) Who were the human rights activists of Russia?

Answer in about 15-20 sentences each (Each carries Five marks) :

- (1) Explain the causes for Cold War.
- (2) Write a note on Berlin Blockade.
- (3) Write a note on Second Berlin crisis.
- (4) Write a note on SEATO and Warsaw Pact.
- (5) What were the effects of Cold War?
- (6) What are the factors responsible for the disintegration of Russia?
- (7) What are the aims and objectives of C.I.S?

Answer in 30-40 sentences each (Each carries Ten marks) :

- (1) Explain Regional Military Pacts.

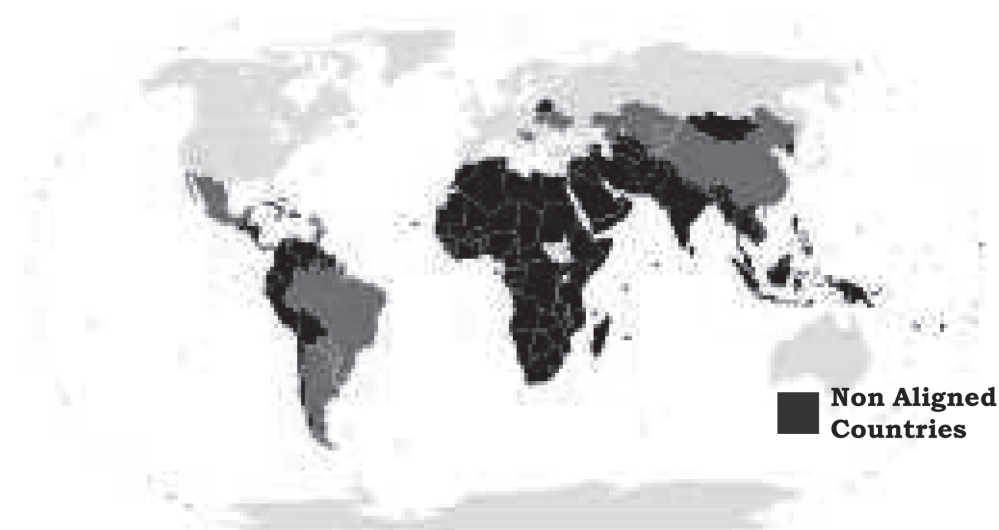


Chapter 12

Non-Aligned Movement–Emergence of the Third world.

Non-Aligned Movement is an International union. It emerged during Cold War period. This is a union of those countries that decided to remain independent of American or Soviet Union Blocs. The countries of Africa, Asia and Latin American continents that became independent after the World War II are the members of this union. The non-aligned countries are Third world countries. Third world is a group of developing countries. Since it does not identify itself with the two super powers of the world, non-aligned movement and Third world are considered one and the same. Non -Aligned Movement is working for world peace. 120 countries of the world are members of this union. It has 55% of world's populations with 20% share in world's Economy.

Latin America: Mexico, Central and South America, Cuba, Portorica and Caribbean Islands in the American continent that used Spanish and Portuguese languages are known as Latin America.



Meaning:

The word Non-Alignment was first used by V.K. Krishna Menon in his speech at the U.N.O in 1953. He was the external Affairs Minister in Jawaharlal Nehru's Cabinet. Later Nehru used it again in his speech in Colombo in 1954.

America and USSR called the Non-Aligned Movement as a group of Neutral countries. It was criticised that neutral denotes inactiveness. Hence, Nehru used Non-Alignment instead of Neutral. He interpreted Non-Alignment as dynamic neutrality. Non-Alignment denotes active neutrality and protesting peacefully the oppression of the two military blocs. As this movement is outside the purview of America and Soviet Blocs, it is called the '**Third world Movement**'.

In the views of Nehru, Non-Alignment is a Movement to settle the international problems through peaceful and harmonious means without the use of force of weapons.

On the whole Non-Aligned Movement means opposing the aggressive policy of power blocs, protecting freedom and equality and developing peaceful co-existence without interfering in the internal affairs of each other

First World: The capitalist military Bloc is called the first world. These countries have developed scientifically, technologically and economically. They are; America, Canada, England, France, Australia, New Zealand, West Germany, Italy, Portugal etc.

Second World (prior to 1991): Countries with communist ideals are called second world countries. They were Russia, Albania, Hungary, Poland, Czechoslovak etc.

Third World: The term third world was first used by Algerian writer Frantz Fanon. Developing or Non-Aligned countries are called third world. They are India, Egypt, Yugoslavia, Brazil, Argentina, Mexico, Zimbabwe, Congo, Kenya, Srilanka etc.

- The Soviet Union was dissolved in 1991 because of the reforms of Gorbachev. This resulted in the disappearance of 2nd World and only the First and Third World are now existing.

Principles of Non-Aligned Movement:

The Panchasheela principles accepted by India and China in 1954 are the principles of Non-Aligned Movement.

They are,

- Mutual respect for each others regional integrity and Sovereignty
- Mutual non-Aggression
- Non interference in internal affairs
- To develop friendly relations based on Mutual co-operation and equality
- Peaceful co-existence

Objectives of Non-Aligned Countries:

1. To reduce the intensity of Cold War between the two powerful military blocs of America and Soviet Union and keep away from the two blocs.
2. To settle international disputes through peaceful dialogues.
3. To Oppose colonialism and Imperialism and support movement against them.
4. To support Atomic weapon reduction agreement and come out of military agreements.
5. To oppose racial conflicts, class discrimination and Apartheid and to stage a fight against them.
6. To condemn the acts of aggression, injustice of the power blocs and to take measures to stop them.
7. To safeguard the weaker countries from the Economic exploitation of the developed countries. To give financial assistance to developing countries.
8. To protect the fundamental human rights
9. To solve problems like poverty, hunger and illiteracy faced by Non-Aligned Nations.
10. To support the programmes undertaken by the United Nations Organisation.
11. To remove Economic dependence and build self dependence.
12. To uphold democratic principles and popularise them.

Formation of Non-Aligned Union



Picture of Belgrade conference 1961

Non-Aligned Movement is a movement by a group of countries which neither aligned nor opposed the two power blocs. The first summit of the Non-Aligned countries was held at Belgrade in 1961. The 16th summit was held at Teheran in Iran in 2012.

Any country which accepts the principles of Non-Alignment can become the member of this union. A meeting is to be held once in every three years. There is no specific Headquarter and Non -Aligned Union has no provision for a General Secretary as in UNO. But the President or Prime Minister of the host nation works as the secretary for the succeeding three years.

List of places and countries where Non-Aligned summits were held:

Sl. No.	Year	Place	Country	Sl. No.	Year	Place	Country
1	1961	Belgrade	Yugoslavia	9	1989	Belgrade	Yugoslavia
2	1964	Cairo	Egypt	10	1992	Jakarta	Indonesia
3	1970	Lusaka	Zambia	11	1995	Carthage	Columbia
4	1973	Algiers	Algeria	12	1998	Durban	South Africa
5	1976	Colombo	Sri Lanka	13	2003	Kuala Lumpur	Malaysia
6	1979	Havana	Cuba	14	2006	Havana	Cuba
7	1983	Delhi	India	15	2009	Cairo	Egypt
8	1986	Harare	Zimbabwe	16	2012	Tehran	Iran

Causes that led to the Emergence of Non-Aligned Movement:

1. Birth of Nationalism:

As a result of the birth of nationalism, many Asian, African and Latin American countries got Independence before the Cold War. They decided to remain independent of power blocs.

2. Problems of Non-Aligned Countries:

Problems like Poverty, illiteracy, unemployment and overpopulation generally faced by the third world countries led to the rise of Non-Aligned Movement. It was inevitable for these countries to join one ideology or an institution to find solution to these problems.

3. Policy of World peace:

World peace was affected by the conflict between capitalist and communist blocs. Hence Non-Aligned Movement emerged to establish world peace.

4. Economic Exploitation:

The Non-Aligned countries came together to free themselves from the economic exploitation and dependence on developed countries to achieve development.

5. To oppose the dominance of power blocs:

Non-Aligned countries came forward to oppose the two power blocs of the world, which imposed their dominance over them.

6. Principles of Panchasheela:

The Panchasheela principles of Nehru inspired the weaker countries to protect their freedom and existence. It led to the birth of Non-Aligned Movement.

7. Able Leadership:

Able leaders like Jawaharlal Nehru, Abdul Nasser, Marshal Tito and Ahmad Sukarno played an important role in Non-Aligned Movement.

8. Cold War:

Cold War started between the two power blocs. Non-Aligned Movement was needed to bring it under control.

Features of Non-Aligned Countries:**1. Economic Backwardness:**

Non-Aligned Countries are economically backward. These countries have primitive Agriculture and weak industries. Hence the national production and per capita income of these countries is very less.

2. Dependence on others:

Non-Aligned Countries are too backward in the fields of

Science, Technology and Military and are dependent on developed countries for assistance.

3. Rural Structure:

Non-Aligned Countries comprise of more number of villages. Many villages are deprived of basic necessities. These countries are lagging behind since they are far away from urbanization.

4. Over population:

Population is increasing because of poverty, illiteracy, superstitions etc. The Governments have failed in checking the growth of population. Programmes relating to population control introduced by the governments have not reached the expected level due to the disinterest of the people. Increasing population is the cause of economic backwardness.

5. Poverty and Hunger:

Poverty is a serious problem among the Non-Aligned Countries. There is shortage of food grains in these countries. They are dependent on the developed countries for food grains. Majority of Africans live in poverty. Non-Aligned countries are victims of poverty because of natural calamities, migration, internal clashes, unsceintific utilisation of natural resources etc. Countries like Nigeria, Somalia, Uganda, Haiti, Angola, and Ethiopia are unable to provide nutritious food.

6. Spread of Epidemics:

Negligence of Health is evident in the Non-Aligned Countries. Hence epidemics are spreading in these countries. There is scarcity of health services. The most dreaded disease AIDS is on rising trend in these countries.

7. Illiteracy:

The Educational development policies of Non-Aligned Countries have failed. The number of illiterates has increased. Literacy is less in African countries and the literacy among women is also very less in Africa. Asian countries are no exception to this.

8. Burden of Debt:

Most of the Non-Aligned Countries are reeling under foreign debt. It is inevitable for them to borrow loans from world economic institutions for their internal development plans. They have been forced to borrow new loans to repay the old loans and interests on them.

9. Migration:

Migration to safer places of other countries for employment, food and self protection is common in these countries. Migration is very high in Africa.

10. Water scarcity, unstable governments and lack of modern military force are common in Non-Aligned countries.

Development of Non-Aligned Movement



List of Non-Aligned countries summits from 1961 to 2012

India is the first country responsible for the emergence of Non-Aligned Movement. India's Prime Minister Jawaharalal Nehru is one of the architects of Non-Aligned Movement. In a meeting of the Asian countries in 1947 at New Delhi, the participating countries felt the need of an organisation to solve their problems. This in the future led to the origin of Non-Aligned Movement.

Bandung Conference: 1955



Nehru, Nkrumah, Nasser, Sukarno and Tito

A conference of the African and Asian countries was held at Bandung in Indonesia in the year 1955. Indonesian President Ahmad Sukarno organised and presided over this conference and 29 countries participated in it. Most important leaders who participated in this conference were Indian Prime Minister Jawaharalal Nehru, Ahmad Sukarno, the President of Indonesia, Josip Broz Tito, the President of Yugoslavia, Abdul Nasser, the President of Egypt, Kwame Nkrumah, the President of Ghana. They are called as the founders of Non-Aligned Movement. They desired peaceful, amicable, military, political, economic, bilateral relationship with America and Soviet Union. Nehru mooted panchasheela principles at the conference. It was seconded by Nasser, Tito, and Sukarno.

Bandung conference advocated the need for world peace. The meeting expressed a desire to pose strong competition to the developed countries. Thus the meeting at Delhi in 1947 and the Bandung conference led to Non-Aligned Movement.

Important Resolutions:

- To bring in mutual Economic Co-operation and Cultural exchange between Afro-Asian countries.
- To give importance to International peaceful co-existence.
- Non interference in the internal affairs of other countries.
- Protection of fundamental human rights
- Not to align with the powerful military blocs of the world.

Belgrade Conference: 1961



Nasser, Tito, Nehru

The first conference of the Non-Aligned Movement was held at Belgrade, the capital of Yugoslavia in the year 1961. The conference was organised and presided over by Josip Broz Tito the President of Yugoslavia. 25 countries from Africa and Asia participated. Tito, Nehru and Nasser played a prominent role in the conference. They have been called as '**The Three stalwarts**' (the Trio) of Non-Aligned bloc. International problems were discussed here.

Important Resolutions:

- To reduce the intensity of Cold War
- To oppose atomic weapons at the international level
- To oppose colonialism
- To implement disarmament
- To move along with U.N.O.
- To end Apartheid
- To strive for world peace.

The prominent countries that participated in this conference: India, Afghanistan, Algeria, Burma, Cambodia, Sri Lanka, Cuba, Egypt, Ghana, Iraq etc.

Achievements of NAM:

Along with the United Nations Organisation Non-Aligned Movement is trying to solve international problems peacefully. Non-Aligned Movement has its role in the achievements of U.N.O. The Achievements of Non-Aligned Movement are as follows:-

1. It has helped to decrease the intensity of Cold War.
2. Helped U.N.O. in resolving the issues pertaining to Korea, Vietnam, Cuba and Kuwait.
3. Worked hard to end Apartheid in South Africa.
4. Inspired treaties to reduce Atomic weapons.
5. Worked to resist the dominance of power blocs.
6. Popularized democratic principles.
7. It is working hard to establish international peace.
8. It is trying to find solutions to the problems faced by member nations.
9. It is fighting for the self reliance of member countries.

Limitations of NAM:

Non-Aligned Movement has been following the path of peace. It has opposed military power blocs. The economically backward and the countries that became independent during Cold War period have come together to achieve political Sovereignty and economic progress. Non-Aligned Movement neither has its own

military nor economic power. Inevitably, they have sought economic assistance from developed countries. This shows the weakness of Non-Aligned Movement.

Limitations of Non-Aligned Movement can be seen in the following few incidents:

- On 2nd August 1990, Kuwait occupied Iraq. Though these two countries are members of Non-Aligned Movement, it failed to solve this problem.
- Arabian countries do not have complete interest in the Non-Aligned Movement.
- Non-Aligned Movement has failed to get such able leadership recently as it had in the beginning .
- The internal disputes among the Non-Aligned countries and the lack of unity have weakened it.
- Non-Aligned countries on the one hand are preaching disarmament and on the other are purchasing armaments from powerful countries.
- Non-Aligned countries do not have their own military power.

It is impossible to achieve any thing through criticism and peace talks.

- Non-Aligned countries have failed in checking terrorism.

India and Non-Aligned Movement:

India played an important role in the origin of Non-Aligned Movement. Jawaharlal Nehru, the Prime Minister of India is called the Architect of Non-Aligned Movement. His 'Panchasheela' formed the important principles of Non-Aligned Movement. India has not only coined the word 'Non-Alignment' but has inspired it.

The following facts show the relation between India and Non-Aligned Movement:

- India has good relation with the other Non-Aligned countries. Nehru's principles got world recognition in the Bandung conference, which officially declared Non-Aligned policy.
- The 7th summit of Non-Aligned countries was held at Delhi in 1983. India's Prime Minister Smt. Indira Gandhi presided over the conference. She said we should become a united voice in the international organizations. Disarmament,

Economic development, technical help were some of the issues that were discussed in this summit. India insisted Israel to withdraw her troops from Palestine.

- At the 8th summit of Non-Aligned countries in Harare, the then Indian Prime Minister Rajeev Gandhi demanded the release of Nelson Mandela of South Africa. He also established the '**African Fund**' to support the blacks who were fighting for their Rights and freedom.
- The 9th summit of Non-Aligned countries was held at Belgrade the capital of Yugoslavia. In this summit Rajeev Gandhi gave a call for establishing '**Global Protection Fund**' for the protection of the environment.
- At the 12th and 13th summits of Non-Aligned countries Indian Prime Minister Atal Bihari Vajapayee gave a call to take a firm decision to combat international Terrorism. India also supported nuclear disarmament.
- At the 14th summit, Indian Prime Minister Manmohan Singh spoke about international terrorism and nuclear disarmament. At the 15th summit he brought to the notice

of Non-Aligned countries, the Mumbai attacks and terrorism.

At the 16th summit held in Iran, Indian Prime Minister Manmohan Singh advocated the need for international action against the spread of nuclear armaments and terrorism. He also gave a call to find a solution to the Syrian problem acceptable to all.

In this way India has developed good relations with the Non-Aligned Movement.

Questions:

Answer in one word or one sentence (Each carries one mark)

1. Who was the first to use the word 'Non-Aligned'?
2. What is Non – Aligned Movement?
3. What according to Nehru is Non-Aligned Movement?
4. Where was the first summit of Non – Aligned countries held?
5. When was the Bandung conference held?
6. When was the Belgrade conference held?
7. Who was the Indian Prime Minister who participated in the Bandung conference?

8. Who was the Indonesian President who participated in the Bandung conference?
9. Name the Egyptian President who participated in the Bandung conference?
10. Who presided over the Non-Aligned Summit at Delhi?

Answer in two words or two sentences (Each carries two Marks)

1. Who used the word 'Non-Aligned' for the first time? When?
2. Where and when did Nehru use the word 'Non-Aligned'?
3. Write the two principles of Non-Aligned Movement.
4. When was the Bandung conference held? Who presided over it?
5. Name the two leaders of Bandung conference.
6. Who were called as '**The Three stalwarts**' (The Trio) of NAM?
7. When was the Belgrade summit held? Who presided over it?
8. Where and in which year did the Non-Aligned Movement begin?

9. When was the first summit of Non-Aligned Countries held?
Who presided over it?
10. Where and when was the 7th Summit of Non-Aligned countries held?

Answer in 15 to 20 sentences (Each carries five marks)

1. Describe the objectives of Non- Aligned Movement.
2. Describe the causes for the rise of Non-Aligned Movement.
3. Describe the features of Non-Aligned Movement.
4. Describe the achievements of Non-Aligned Movement.
5. What are the limitations of Non-Aligned Movement?
6. Write about the relationship between India and NAM.

IV. Answer in 30 to 40 sentences (Ten Marks)

1. Trace the development of Non-Aligned Movement.



Chapter: 13 – MAP WORK:

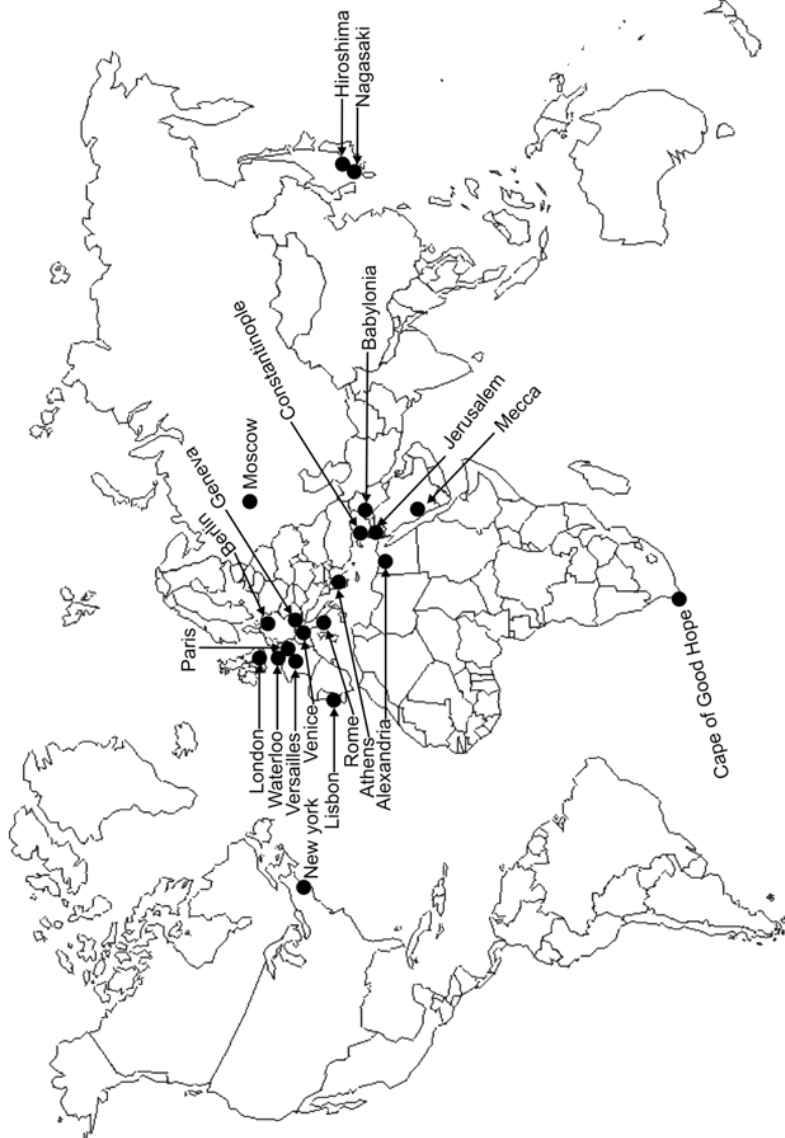
HISTORICAL PLACES OF WORLD IMPORTANCE

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------|
| 1. Babylonia | 11. London |
| 2. Athens | 12. Paris |
| 3. Rome | 13. Waterloo |
| 4. Alexandria | 14. Berlin |
| 5. Jerusalem | 15. Moscow |
| 6. Mecca | 16. Versailles |
| 7. Venice | 17. Hiroshima |
| 8. Constantinople | 18. Nagasaki |
| 9. Cape of Good Hope | 19. New York |
| 10. Lisbon | 20. Geneva |

Note:

1. Out of the given 20 places any **Eight** will be asked, of which students have to mark **Five** places on the outline map of the world. Five marks will be awarded for marking the places correctly and other Five marks for writing the historical importance of each marked place in two sentences.
2. The student should write the importance of the places as explained in this book.
3. An alternative essay type question carrying Ten Marks will be asked for **Visually Challenged Students**.
4. Paper setters should not ask more than 3 places from a continent. The places should have minimum distance between them so that they can be easily identified. Two places from the same country should not be asked.

MAP WORK - PLACES OF WORLD IMPORTANCE



1. **Babylonia:**

It is in present Iraq. It was the capital of Mesopotamian Civilization. The famous law-giver Hammurabi ruled from here. Nebuchadnezzar built the 'Hanging Gardens'.

2. **Athens:**

It is the present capital city of Greece. It was one of the city-states of Ancient Greek civilization. The city was named after the Goddess Athena. The famous Parthenon Temple is located here.

After Greeks, Athens was ruled by the Romans. In 15th century C.E. it was captured by the Ottoman Turks. After the Greek war of Independence in the 19th century Athens was chosen as the capital of the newly independent Greek state in 1834.

3. **Rome:**

It is the capital of Italy. It was also the capital of Roman Empire. Vatican City in Rome is the centre of Pope, who is the religious head of the Catholics.

According to a Roman legend Rome was founded by the twins **Romulus and Remus** in 8th century B.C.E. According to another version the name is derived from the Greek word '**Rhome**' which means '**strength**'.

4. **Alexandria:**

It is in northern Egypt. It was founded by Alexander the Great. It was intended to be the link between Greece and the rich Nile Valley.

An Egyptian City, Rhakotis already existed on the shores and later gave its name to Alexandria. In the Egyptian language, it means '**That which is built up**'.

5. Jerusalem:

It is in Israel. It is a holy city of the three major religions- Judaism, Christianity and Islam. Jesus was crucified here in 30 CE.

6. Mecca:

It is in Saudi Arabia. Prophet Muhammad, the founder of Islam was born here. It is regarded as the holiest city of Islam.

7. Venice:

It is in Italy. It was one of the centres of Trade and Commerce during Medieval Period. Famous travellers Marco Polo and Nicolo Polo belonged to this city.

Marco Polo in his book '**Travels of Marco Polo the Venetion**' gave a thrilling account about the richness of the Asian Countries. His narrations inspired the European explorers to discover new sea-routes.

8. Constantinople:

Presently called as Istanbul in Turkey. It was the capital of Eastern Roman Empire. Ottoman Turks captured Constantinople in 1453, which led to the discovery of new sea routes.

The first name of the city was Byzantium, which was founded in 7th Century B.C.E. by a Greek King **Byzas**. Constantine the Great made it the new eastern capital of the Roman Empire in 4th century C.E. Then the city came to be known as Constantinople which means '**The City of Constantine**'.

9. Cape of Good Hope:

It is in South Africa. Bartholomew Diaz called it 'Cape of Storms'. Later Vasco-da-gama renamed it as 'Cape of Good Hope' under the direction of King John of Portugal, since it gave hope for further explorations to reach India.

10. Lisbon:

It is the capital city of Portugal. Most of the Portuguese navigators, including Vasco-da-Gama of the Age of discovery started their voyages from this city.

11. London:

It is the capital of UK, located on the banks of the river Thames. It was the main centre of Industrial Revolution. It is the famous centre of learning.

According to one origin, London meant 'place belonging to a man called 'Londinos'. According to another view, it is derived from the river Thames which flows through London, that is 'Lowonida' meaning '**river too wide to ford**'. Thus the etymology of London is uncertain.

12. Paris:

It is the capital city of France. Bourbon family ruled over France till the French Revolution of 1789. In modern times many historical treaties were signed here.

The name Paris is derived from that of its earliest inhabitants, known as the '**Parissi**' meaning '**The working People**' or 'The Craftsmen'.

The city has many nicknames. The most famous one is 'The City of Light', due to its fame as a centre of education. It is also called as 'Paradise of Travellers'.

13. Waterloo:

It is in Belgium. In 1815, Napoleon fought his last battle here against the Allied armies of Europe. This is famous as 'The Battle of Waterloo..

14. Berlin:

Present capital city of Germany. It is located on the banks of River Spree. After World War II it was divided as East and West Berlin and a dividing wall was built. In 1990 both East and West Germanys were reunited and the Berlin wall was removed.

15. Moscow:

It is the capital city of Russia, located on the banks of river Moskva. It was one of the centre of Russian Revolution of 1917 and was made the capital of USSR.

The city of Moscow named after the river Moskva- meaning **'The city by the Moskva River'**.

16. Versailles:

It is in France. Louis XIV built the largest palace here. After the World War I, Treaty of Versailles was signed here between Germany and the Allied powers in 1919.

Earlier Versailles was a village. French ruler Louis XIII used to go on hunting in the forest surrounding Versailles. Pleased with the location he constructed a hunting lodge in 1624. His successor, Louis XIV had it expanded into one of the largest palace in the world. From 1682 he established his court at Versailles.

17. Hiroshima:

It is in Japan. The first Atomic Bomb was dropped on this city by USA at the end of World War II in 1945. As a result of this an estimated 80,000 people were killed.

Hiroshima means 'Wide Island'. During the World War II the city had large depots of military supplies. At the end of the war when Japan did not surrender, on Monday, August 6, 1945 at 8.15 AM an Atomic Bomb called **'Little**

Boy' was dropped on Hiroshima, directly killing an estimated 80,000 people. The Oleander is the official flower of the city of Hiroshima as it was the first to bloom again after the explosion of the atomic bomb in 1945.

18. Nagasaki:

It is in Japan. During World War II America dropped atomic bomb on August 9, 1945. As a result of this more than 70,000 people died.

Nagasaki means '**Long cape**'. It was founded by the Portuguese in 16th century. During the World War II atomic bomb called '**Fat Man**' was dropped on Nagasaki.

19. New York:

It is located in USA. It was one of the colonies of British. The Head Quarters of UNO is located here.

Both the state and city were named after the 17th Century Duke of York, James Stuart of England and Scotland. Originally it was a Dutch Colony. In 17th Century it was called as '**New Amsterdam**'. Later on the English captured it and called it as '**New York**'.

20. Geneva:

It is in Switzerland. It was one of the centres of Protestant movement. International organizations like ILO, WHO, WTO and GATT are located here.

Questions:

- 1) Mark any Five of the following Historical places on the outline map of world, and add an explanatory note on each marked place in two sentences: $5+5=10$
a) Waterloo b) Hiroshima c) Lisbon d) Moscow
e) Mecca f) Berlin g) Constantinople
h) Cape of Good Hope
- 2) Mark any Five of the following Historical places on the outline map of world, and add an explanatory note on each marked place in two sentences: $5+5=10$
a) Rome b) Paris c) Nagasaki d) Babylonia
e) Alexandria f) London g) Geneva h) Athens
- 3) Mark any Five of the following Historical places on the outline map of world, and add an explanatory note on each marked place in two sentences: $5+5=10$
a) Venice b) Versailles c) Jerusalem d) New York
e) Hiroshima f) Cape of Good Hope g) Moscow h) Mecca

QUESTION PARER BLUE PRINT

Total Teaching hours:120

Q.P.TOTAL MARKS:100

WORLD HISTORY

Chapters	Knowledge			Understanding			Application			Skill			Total					
	VSA	SA		VSA	SA	SA/ET	SA	ET		SA	ET		1	2	5	Map	10	Total
	1/2	5		1/2	5	5/10	5	10		5	10		2	2	5			
1	1 1				5								2		5			07
2	1 2				5								1	2	5			08
3	1 2							10					1	2			10	13
4	1 1 2							10*					2	2				04
5	1 2					5							1	2	5			08
6	2					5								2	5			07
7	1 1 1					5*10							3				10	13
8	1 1 2* 2 2							10*					2	4				06
9	1 1 1 2					10*							3	2				05
10	1 1 1					5		10*					3		5			08
11	2* 2					5								2	5			07
12	1 1 2					5*							2	2				04
13												10				10		10
Total	40			30			20			10		20	20	20	30	10	20	100

1. EASY	40%	KNOWLEDGE BASED	40%	VERY SHORT ANSWER	1/2Marks
2. AVERAGE	40%	UNDERSTANDING BASED	30%	SHORT ANSWER	5Marks
3. DIFFICULT	20%	APPLICATION BASED	20%	ESSEY TYPE	10Marks
		SKILL BASED	10%	Map	10Marks

I P.U.C MODEL QUESTION PAPER

Sub Code: 21 WORLD HISTORY Total Questions: 37

Time: 3:15 Hours

Max Marks:100

Note: (i) Write Sl. No's of questions correctly.

(ii) Visually challenged students need to answer question No. 31 'B' instead of Map Question No. 31 'A' in Part – D

(iii) Answer the Questions according to the instructions given for the Questions.

PART – A

I. Answer the following questions in one word or one sentence each:

10x1=10

- 1) Who wrote the book 'The City of God'?
- 2) Name the ruler who started the construction of Great Wall of China.
- 3) Who was Gaius Julius Caesar?
- 4) What is Hejira?
- 5) When did the Ottoman Turks capture Constantinople?
- 6) Who was the king ruling over Russia on the eve of Russian Revolution?
- 7) Which was the last Battle of Napoleon Bonaparte?

- 8) Which treaty ended the World War I.
- 9) Which is the famous book of Hitler?
- 10) Who used the term Non-Aligned Movement for the first time?

PART – B

II. Answer any Ten of the following Questions in 2 words or 2 sentences each: 10x2=20

- 11) Mention any two theories of 'Origin of the Earth'.
- 12) Write any two factors that helped the growth of civilization.
- 13) Name any two city- states of the ancient Greeks.
- 14) Write any two festivals of the Christians.
- 15) Who were the major intellectual personalities of the Higher Middle Ages ?
- 16) What is Revolution?
- 17) Name any two British Colonies in America.
- 18) Which are the two important books of Karl Marx?
- 19) Who was the architect of unification of Germany? What was his policy?
- 20) Who was Truman? What was the Provision of Truman Doctrine?
- 21) Expand: CIS. Where is its head quarters located?
- 22) Who were called as 'Trio'(Three Stalwarts) of Non-aligned Movement bloc?

PART – C**III. Answer any SIX of the following questions in 15 to 20 sentences each: 6x5=30**

- 23) Write any Five uses of the study of History.
- 24) Explain any two factors of Human Evolution.
- 25) Briefly explain the teachings of Prophet Mohammed.
- 26) Give an account of the causes for the decline of Feudalism.
- 27) Write a note on the development of literature during Renaissance.
- 28) Explain the results of World War II.
- 29) Give an account of the Regional Military Pacts of the Cold War.
- 30) Explain the role of India in Non-aligned Movement.

PART – D**IV. Answer the following questions as Indicated:**

- 31 A) Mark any Five of the following Historical Places on the outline map of the world provided to you and add an explanatory note on each marked place in two sentences. **5+5=10**

- (a) Rome. (b) Jerusalem (c) Cape of Good Hope.
- (d) New York (e) London.
- (f) Berlin. (g) Hiroshima. (h) Moscow.

FOR VISUALLY CHALLENGED STUDENTS ONLY**31 B) Answer the following question in 30 to 40 sentences:****1x10=10**

Describe the political, social and Economic life of the Egyptian Civilization.

OR

Write a note on the role played by Mazzini, Cavour and Garibaldi in the unification of Italy.

PART – E**V. Answer any two of the following questions in 30 to 40 sentences each:****2x10=20**

- 32) Explain the contributions of the Greeks in the fields of literature, Science and Philosophy.
- 33) Describe the role of Martin Luther in the Reformation Movement.
- 34) Briefly write about the causes and results of the French Revolution of 1789.
- 35) Describe the achievements of UNO.

PART –F**VI. 36) Match the following:****5**

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Nehru | Helio- Centric Theory |
| 2. Nebuchadnezzar | New Economic Policy |
| 3. Copernicus | Red Shirts |
| 4. Lenin | Discovery of India |
| 5. Garibaldi | Hanging Garden of Babylonia |

37) Arrange the following events in Chronological Order: **5**

1. Treaty of Versailles
2. Bandung Conference
3. Construction of Parthenon Temple
4. Unification of Germany
5. Invention of Printing Press

I PUC - World History**SCHEME OF VALUATION****PART - A**

- | | | |
|----------|--|---|
| I | 1. St. Augustine. | 1 |
| | 2. Shih Hu Wang Ti. | 1 |
| | 3. Great general, dictator, reformer and the symbol of Ancient Rome. | 1 |
| | 4. The secret journey of Prophet Mohammed from Mecca to Madina. | 1 |
| | 5. 1453 CE. | 1 |
| | 6. Tsar Nicholas II. | 1 |
| | 7. The battle of Waterloo. | 1 |
| | 8. Treaty of Paris in 1919. | 1 |
| | 9. Mein Kampf or My Struggle. | 1 |
| | 10. V.K. Krishna Menon of India. | 1 |

PART – B

- II** 11. Steady Earth theory, Pulsating theory, the Big Bang theory, etc., (Any two) 1+1
12. Deposition of fertile soil, supply of water, favourable climate, plenty of food, river helped the growth of trade. (Any two) 1+1
13. Athens, Sparta, Corinth & Thebes. (Any Two) 1+1
14. Christmas, Good Friday, Easter Sunday. (Any Two) 1+1
15. Robert Grosseteste, Roger Bacon, Peter Abelard & St. Thomas Aquinas. (Any Two) 1+1
16. Term derived from Latin 'revolutio' which means turnaround. Fundamental change in power organizational structure in a short period. 2
17. New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Delaware, Pennsylvania & Georgia. (Any Two) 1+1
18. Communist Manifesto and Das capital. 1+1
19. Bismarck – Blood and Iron Policy 1+1
20. The president of USA. By this he provided Greece and Turkey Economic and military aid to the tune of 400 million dollars. 1+1
21. Common Wealth of Independent States- Minsk. 1+1
22. Josip Broz Tito, Nehru & Gamal Abdul Nasser. 1+1

PART – C

- III 23.** History is the memory of the ancient pasts, teaches religious tolerance, the source of Inspiration, promotes patriotism, a laboratory of social sciences, infuses noble ideals, helps to broaden our outlook, it has professional uses & removes prejudices. (Each in 2 or 3 sentences)
5
24. Climate change, growth in Brain size, Food & shelter, Bipedalism, Tool making, language, Domestication of animals & commencement of agriculture. (Any two with 8 to 10 sentences each)
5
25. Faith called Islam, means “Submission to God Allah”. Sacred book Quran. Five pillars of Islam- Kalima, Namaz, Zaqat, Roza & Hajj & other teachings.
5
26. Rise of strong monarchies, shifting of loyalty, growth of commerce & industry, dominance of money economy, building of strong armies by Kings, scarcity of labourers, mutual fighting between feudal Lords. [2-3 sentences on each].
5
27. Writings about man & his activities- humanist movement development of vernacular languages of Europe. Leonardo Bruni translated the books of Plato. Aristotle & Socrates to Italian, Petrarch- sonnets, Dante- Divine comedy, Boccaccio – Decameron, Erasmus- Praise & Folly; Machiavelli- The Prince, Cervantes- Don Quixote, Thomas Moore – Utopia, Milton – Paradise lost, William Shakespeare – 57 plays, Julius Caesar, Hamlet, Romeo Juliet, others etc.,
5
28. Most destructive war, the end of dictatorships in Italy & Germany, USA & USSR emerged super powers, led to the cold war, victory of the principle of Nationalism & the liquidation of colonialism. Creation of Israel for Jews, disastrous effects of atomic weapons in Japan, the birth of UNO to prevent future wars & maintaining peace. 5

29. i. NATO in 1949 at Washington under the leadership of America – 27 European Countries to fight against Russia.
 ii. SEATO (Manila pact – 1954) to resist the Communist aggression.
 iii. ANZUSPACT-1951 – America, New Zealand & Australia to help each other in the Pacific region.
 iv. CENTO (The Baghdad Pact 1955) – Britain, Turkey, Iraq, Pakistan & Iran anti-Soviet block in the Middle East.
 v. Warsaw Pact (1955 to 1991) under Russia-East European rival organization Bulgaria, Czechoslovakia, Hungary, Poland & others, Russia became more powerful. It was dissolved in 1991. 5
30. Origin in India, Pancha sheela Principles, Nehru considered as its architect, 7th NAM summit held at New Delhi in 1983-Indira Gandhi, 8th summit at Harare-Rajiv Gandhi appealed for the release of Nelson Mandela- In the 12th and 13th summit Atal Bihari Vajpayee gave call to impose ban on atomic bombs & International Terrorism. In the 15th summit Man Mohan Singh condemned the attack on Bombay & Terrorism & also supported nuclear disarmament. 5

PART – D

- IV.** 31 (a) a) Rome: Capital of Italy. Capital of Roman Empire.
 Vatican City – centre of Pope. 1
- b) Jerusalem: In Israel- holy city of Judaism, Christianity & Islam. Jesus crucified here. 1
- c) Cape of Good Hope: In South Africa. Diaz called 'cape of storms'. Renamed as 'Cape of Good Hope'. 1
- d) New York: In U.S.A. One of the 13 British Colonies. Head Quarters of U.N.O is located here. 1
- e) London: Capital of U.K. centre of Industrial Revolution. 1

- f) Berlin: Capital of Germany. After World War II divided as East & West Berlin. Reunified in 1990. 1
- g) Hiroshima: In Japan. Atomic Bomb dropped by USA in 1945. 80000 killed. 1
- h) Moscow: Capital of Russia. One of the centres of Russian Revolution of 1917. 1

FOR VISUALLY CHALLENGED STUDENTS ONLY

31(b) City-States formed- Birth of kingdoms – 30 dynasties ruled Egypt. Egyptian Kings called ‘Pharoos’ – representative of God. Menes united upper and lower Egypt – The periods of Old, Middle and New Kingdoms. King Thutmose I – Queen Hatshepsut, First empress in the history of world. Three Classes in the society – Upper, Middle and Slaves – Women enjoyed high status – equal share in the ancestral property- Incestuous marriages. Agrarian Economy- Crops like wheat, Barley, Cotton, Peas, Garlic, Fruits and vegetables- Canals and Shadoof irrigations- Crops and Manufacturers- Trade and Commerce- Barter system.

OR

Role of Mazzani- ‘soul of Italian unification’. “Pen is mightier than sword” infused patriotism- founded ‘Young Italy ’ in 1831. He was banished. Guided movement. Count De-Cavour- Prime Minister of Victor Emmanuel II. Got the help of other European countries- Participated in Crimean War. Got the sympathy of France regarding Italian unification- War with Austria- Conquered Lombardy- Other states like Modena, Parma, Tuscany, Romagna, Umbria and others merged with Sardinia. Garibaldi: Great patriot, ‘Sword of Italian unification- Founded an army- Red Shirts- Conquered

states like Sicily and Naples. In 1861 Italian unification declared, Turin became the capital- By 1870 states of Venetia and Rome were conquered and achieved complete unification and Rome became capital.

10

PART-E

V 32 Literature: Epics, Poetry, Drama and History- Homer's epics called Illiad and Odyssey, Lyric poets- Pindar and Sappho. In drama tragedies- Aschylus, Sophocles, Euripides and their writings. Aristophanes comic poet. Historians Herodotus, Thucydides, Plutarch who wrote biographies. Orator Demosthenes. Science: Aristotle, study of natural science. Theophrastus- Botany. Hippocrates- Father of Medicine. Herephilus on Anatomy. Aristarchus on Earth revolve round the sun. Ptolemy on universe. Pythagoras and Euclid on Mathematics. Archimedes was another scientist Philosophy: Philosophia- 'Love of wisdom'. Famous philosophers – Socrates, Plato and Aristotle- their ideas and works.10

33 Role of Martin Luther(1483-1546) leader of reformation movement- Born in Germany, Masters Degree in Theology and became professor of Theology. Visited Rome in 1511. Shocked at the worldliness of the Pope- Evil practices- sale of indulgences. Wrote the book 'The Manifesto of Reformation'. '95 Theses'-Pasted them on the church door at Wittenberg. Luther attached doctrines of the catholic church. Pope Leo X excommunicated Luther- Papal Bull. Translated Bible into German- Established Lutheran National Church- Thus Protestant movement started. Conflict between Catholics and Protestants- 'Peace of Augusburg in 1555 recognized Lutheranism. It spread to many other European counties.

10

34 French Revolution of 1789- Against the royal

despotism. Causes: 1. Political: Bourbon dynasty ruled- absolute monarchs- Louis XIV, Louis XV and Louis XVI- Neglected the interests of the people- led a luxurious life. Louis XVI was the puppet of the queen 2. Social: Social inequality- privileged and unprivileged classes- discrimination 3. Economic: Defective and unfair taxation policy- Clergy and Nobles exempted from all taxes. Commoners had to pay all taxes- The sufferings of peasants and workers. 4. Intellectual: Montesquieu, Voltaire, Rousseau and Diderot- The Spirit Of Laws, The Letters on the English, Social Contract- Principles- Liberty, Equality and fraternity. 5. Influence of American War of Independence. 6. Immediate cause- Financial bankruptcy of France. Results: 1. Abolished absolute monarchy- Ended feudalism and hereditary aristocracy. 2. Ended the special privileges of the clergy and nobility. 3. Upheld 'Doctrine of Popular Sovereignty'. 4. Popularized ideas of liberty, equality and fraternity. 5. Spread unity and taught the principle of nationalism. 6. Caused heavy bloodshed- Nearly 17000 were killed during 'The Reign of Terror'. 7. Revolution gave an opportunity for the rise of Napoleon as Military dictator of France. 'The Child of Revolution'.

(6 Marks for causes and 4 Marks for results) 10

35 Achievements of the U.N.O- Political and Non Political :

- 1) Russian Troops stationed on Northern Iran were made to withdraw.
- 2) Quarrel between Holland and Indonesia settled in 1948
- 3) The U.N.O ordered cease-fire in Kashmir in 1948
- 4) Dispute between North and South Korea settled
- 5) The Suez Canal and Vietnam problems solved
- 6) Occupation of Kuwait by Iraq in 1991- Iraq was ordered

to withdraw its troops.

- 7) Carried out peace- keeping operations in Greece, Cyprus, Lebanon, Congo, Cambodia etc
- 8) Ended apartheid regime in South Africa in 1991.

Non Political:

- 1) Declaration of Human Rights on 10th December 1948
- 2) I.L.O improved the conditions of labourers
- 3) FAO- increased the food production
- 4) IMF and IBRD provided funds for economic development
- 5) UNESCO- Achievements in various fields- Preserved many cultural sites 6) UNICEF- Eradicate hunger and malnutrition among children- WHO improved the health of the people.

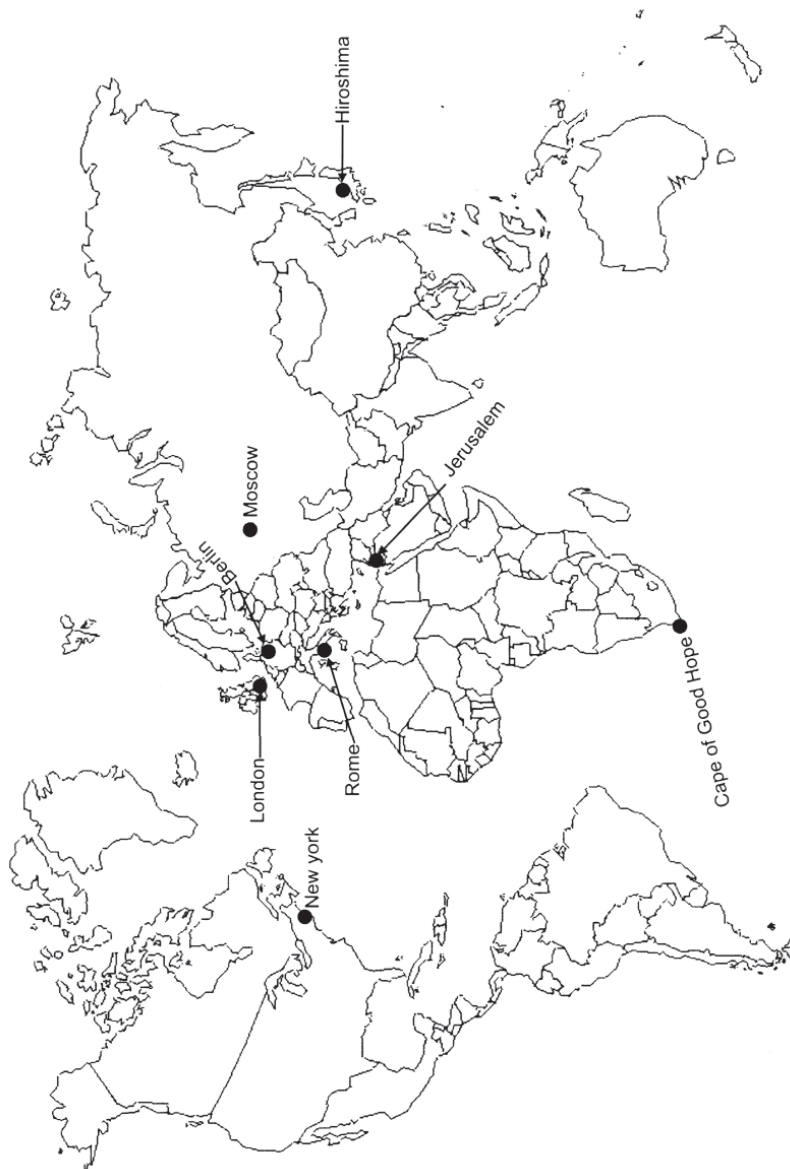
10

PART – F

- | | | | | |
|------|--------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------|---|
| V 36 | 1) Nehru | - | Discovery of India | |
| | 2) Nebuchadnezzar | - | Hanging Garden of
Babylonia | |
| | 3) Copernicus | - | Helio – Centric Theory | |
| | 4) Lenin | - | New Economic Policy | |
| | 5) Garibaldi | - | Red Shirts | 5 |
| 37 | 1) Construction of Parthenon temple. | | | 5 |
| | 2) Invention of printing press. | | | |
| | 3) Unification of Germany. | | | |
| | 4) Treaty of Versailles. | | | |
| | 5) Bandung Conference. | | | |



MAP WORK - PLACES OF WORLD IMPORTANCE



Notes